



**DELHI UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY**

DELHI UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Cl. No. P111:D

Ac. No. 112-162

Date of release for loan

This book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below. An overdue charge of 0 6 np. will be charged for each day the book is kept overtime.

A G U I D E
TO THE
ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:

A G R A M M A R

AFTER ERASMUS RASK;

EXTRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE, WITH NOTES, ETC

FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS.

With an Appendix.

BY
EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON. B.A.
MAGDALENE HALL.

Artiquam exquirite Materiem



LONDON:
REEVES & TURNER,
5, WELLINGTON ST. STRAND, W.C.

TO

JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ D.C.L.

Principal of Magdalene Hall,

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF

RESPECT AND ESTEEM

P R E F A C E.

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works prevalent in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the clitic verbs, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a perfect knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

The Syntax is in great part new; the examples mostly gathered from the compiler's own reading.

The Extracts in prose and verse are fitted by explanatory notes for use without a dictionary. An analysis of the narrative verse, partly shortened from Rask, and a literal version of the poetry, are also given. The purpose here being to teach pure Anglo-Saxon only the selections are all from writers of a good age; one well grounded in the language in its perfect state, will not find it hard to bring down his knowledge of his native tongue, through Semi-Saxon, and Old and Middle English, to our own time.

The Appendix contains lists of words likely to be confounded by learners, together with a number of additional notes. For the length to which the latter have run some apology may be needed, but it seemed best not to lose the opportunity of bringing in, however irregularly, some matter which may be useful.

To Mr. J. M. Kemble, Editor of *Beowulf &c.*, who shares with Mr. Thorpe the honour of making his countrymen independent of foreigners for a right knowledge of their old national language and literature, sincere thanks are due for much very kind, and most valuable help and advice touching the accent, gender, and other hard and weighty points, on which opinions from such an authority cannot be too highly prized. Obliging hints, and the loan of scarce books from other quarters, must also be thankfully acknowledged.

The compiler, seeing what scanty justice has been done to these various and welcome aids, must add that

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which ne cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structur , and true spirit, and i greater love for the power an i worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time^s and labour will not have been spent in vain.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Preface

CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.

1. Alphabet &c.	1
2. Accent	2
3. Pronunciation	3
4. Spelling	4
5 Change of Letters	5
6 Correspondence of do.	7

CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.

1. Genders	8
2. Inflection	10
3. Simple Order, or Declension I.	12
4. Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1.	14
5. — — — — — 2.	14
6. — — — — — 3.	16
7. Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1.	17
8. — — — — — 2.	18
9. — — — — — 3.	19

CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES

1. Inflection	20
2. Definite Declension	21
3. Indefinite Declension I.	22
4. — — — II.	23
5. Comparison	24
6. Irregular do.	25

CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.

	PAGE.
1. Personal	27
2. Possessive	29
3. Demonstrative	30
4. Interrogative	31
5. Indefinite	32
6. Cardinal Numbers	33
7. Ordinal do.	35

CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

1. Conjugation	37
2. Chief Tenses	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I.	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1.	41
5. — — — 2.	42
6. — — — 3.	45
7. Complex Order	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1.	48
9. — — — 2.	50
10. — — — 3.	53
11. Conjugation III.	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1.	55
13. — — — 2.	58
14. — — — 3.	59
15. Anomalous Verbs	60
16. Auxiliaries &c.	62

CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS

1. Prefixes	63
2. Nominal Terminations	65
3. Adjectival do.	67
4. Verbal do.	68
5. Particles	69
6. Composition	71

CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax	73
2 Syntax of Nouns	74
3 — — Adjectives	76
4. — — Verbs	78
5 — — Prepositions	87
6 — — Conjunctions	92
7. — — Interjections	96

CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13.	98
2 S. Mark, VI 32.	100
3 S. Luke, XX 9—25.	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28.	107
5. Genesis, XLV	109
6 Exodus, XXIII.	113
7 Saxon Chronicle	117
8. Apollonius	121
9 Boethius, XVII., XXXIV 10.	129

CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1 Narrative Verse	135
2. Boethius, Metre XII.	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI	145
4. Beowulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII.	159

APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning	1
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners	174
4. Additional Notes	180

ABBREVIATIONS &c.

A. S. Anglo-Saxon.

Comp compare.

D Dutch.

F French.

G German.

Goth Gothic.

Gr. Greek.

L Latin.

lit. literally.

O. old English in general

P provincial.

S Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland and part of the north of England.

Numbers, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class, to a verb, the conjugation and class, to an adjective, the indefinite declension.

G U I D E

TO THE
ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

CHAPTER I.

SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A	a	[A]	N	n
Æ	æ	[Æ]	O	o
B	b		P	p
C	c	[C]	R	r [p]
D	d	[b]	S	s [r]
E	e	[e]	T	t [t]
F	f	[F]	U	u
G	g	[G]	W	w [V P P]
H	h	[H P]	X	x
I	i		•Y	y
L	l		þ	þ
M	m	[M]	Ð	ð

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times k was used for c; v and z occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *j* for *and*, *p* for *þæt*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general — shows that m or n is left out

II.—Accent.

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, *lár* *lore* (G. *lehre*), *bær* *bier* (G. *bahre*), *grén* *green* (G. *grün*), *wíð* *wide* (G. *weit*), *gúd* *good* (G. *gut*), *rúm* *room, space* (G. *raum*), *fýr* *fire* (G. *feuer*). Some have become long by contraction, g, h, ng, or n, being left out, as, *smeagan*, *smeán* *to consider*, *sleahan*, *sléán* *to slay*, *gangan*, *gán* *to go*, *fangan*, *fún* *to take*: in *fíf* *five*, *tíð* *tooth*, *múð* *mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted n, as, *n̄evrē*, L. *quinque*, G. *funt*; *ð-ðouç*, *ð-ðouτ-øç*, L. *dens*,⁽¹⁾ G. *zahn*; G. *mund*: a few from the omission of a vowel, as, *tae*, *tá* *toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound, as, *ac* *but*, *ác* *oak*, *mæst* *must*, *mæst* *most*; *wende* *turned*, *went*, *wénde* *weened*, *is* *is*, *is* *ice*; *for* *for*, *fór* *journey*; *ful* *full*,

⁽¹⁾ In A. S. as in Greek, *ns* does not occur in the same syllable.

fúl soul; h y r d e herd, keeper, h ý r d e heard.(²) Without due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot be rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.⁽³⁾

III.—Pronunciation.

The pronunciation is as follows:—

a has the sound of our *a* in *ah*, F. &c. short *a*.

á is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approaching our *au* and *aw*.

au and aw sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more open, like G. and Italian *uu*.

æ is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

é nearly as *a* in *dare*; G. *eh*; F. close é.

e sounds like *e* in *send, rather*, when thus placed; before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the *eu* in *bear*, but is shorter, like F. open é. Before a or o it sounds as *y*; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly sounded, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

é is pronounced like æ.

i and y answer to *i* in *dim*.

i before another vowel to *y*.

í an dý to *ee* in *deem*.

o to short *o* in *not*; F. open *o*. *

ó to long *o* in *note*; F. close ó.

ow is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

(²) Comp. G. *mast, meist*; *wandte, wähnte* · *ist, eis*; *ta-fuhr, voll, raul, hirt, horte*.

(³) The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ü as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:—

c is always hard like *k*, cw stands for *qu*, which was however used in later times

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.⁽¹⁾

cg i- usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw anweis to our *wh*; h occurs also before l, n and r.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before r; likewise before l.

þ (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

ð (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

þ usually begins, ð ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

IV.—Spelling.

The A. S. spelling was very variable, the following are the commonest changes:—

¹ It is likely that g before e or i, and (like h) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

á — æ and æ — á; þám, þém; þáre, þare.
 a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule.*
 a — o and o — a; man, mon⁽²⁾ *man*; on, an *on.*
 ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester⁽³⁾ *toun; fela,*
feala many; éa — é, teáh, téh d̄rew.
 i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it: him, heom them.*
 í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, híe, heo *they.*
 eo — u, y, e; sveord, swurd *sword; seolf, sylf,*
self self.
 eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest.*
 g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow.*
 ng, nc, nge, sang, sanc, sangc *song:* n and g
 are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen
servant, thane. g is sometimes added or cast off at the
 end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi
heavy: it is often left out before d or ð; mægden,
 mæden *maiden, mægð, mæð tribe*
 es, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to*
ask (ax).⁽⁴⁾

V.—*Change of Letters.*

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the like, the English sometimes

a is changed into æ, and vice versa; grafan *to grave,* (G. graben); þú græfst thou *gravest,* (G. du grabst);

⁽¹⁾ P. *mon* for *man*, *lang* for *long*, and the like.

⁽²⁾ L. *castra*; hence Chester, -chester, &c. in local names.

⁽³⁾ See also nouns II. 2, and irregular comparison.

bað *bath*, (G. *bad*) ; baðu *bath*: (G. *bäder*).⁽¹⁾
 a into e; man, *man* (G. *mann*) ; men⁽²⁾ *men* (G. *männer*).

á into á; hál *hale*, *whole*, ge-hálan *to heal*.
 ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst uyhst *nighest*, *next*.
 e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain* ;
 storm *storm* (G. *sturm*) ; styrman *to storm* (G. *stürmen*) ;
 weorc *work* (G. *werk*), wyrcan *to work* (G. *wirken*) ;
 hunger *hunger*, hýngrian^o *to hunger*.

eá, eó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. *los*) ; a-lýsan *to re-lease* (G. *er-lösen*) ; neód *need* (G. *noth*) ; nýdan *to force* (G. *nothigen*) ; scrúd *shroud*, scrýdan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem*, *doom*.
 bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted*⁽⁴⁾.
 c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought* ;
 feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht*⁽⁵⁾.
 g into h and vice versa ; wrígan *to cover*, ie wráh *I covered* ; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas⁽⁶⁾.
 s into r⁽⁷⁾ ; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)froren *frozen*.
 ð into d⁽⁸⁾ ; sniðan *to cut* (G. *scheiden*), suisden *cut* (G. *ge-schnitten*).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex ; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1 3. and in adjectives.

(1) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(2) See Nouns III. 2.

(3) See irregular comparison.

(4) See Verbs II. 3.

(5) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(6) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(7) See Verbs III. 3.

(8) See Verbs II. 1, and III. 2.

VL.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their derivation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o, G. ei, l. e; ban⁽⁹⁾ *bone*, G. bein; máre⁽¹⁰⁾ *more, greater*, G. mehr.

éá to E. l. e; G. l. o, a au: streám *stream*, G. strom; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. g-laube.

ea to E. short a, l. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; ceald *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

áé to E. l. e, a, o; G. l. a, ei: sáed *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; mæst⁽¹¹⁾ *most*, G. meist.

é to E. l. e; G. l. u, a: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to wesen, imagine*, G. wahnen.

í to E. l. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, sweord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel

ó to E. oo; G. l. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

eó, eów to E. l. e; G. l. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deór *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. l. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(9) S. *bans*.

(10) S. *mair*.

(11) S. *maest*.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, au, o: fýr *fire*, G. feuer; brýd *bride*, G. braut, hýran *to hear*, G. hören

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. ch, k: cyle *chill*, G. kuhle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G. strecken; liccian *to leach*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc *dish*, table, G. tisch; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear *year*, G. jahr, gustan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost
bridl (*young*) *bird*, flacse *flax*, G. flasche.

CHAPTER II.

I.—*Nouns. Gender.*

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter: { wíf G. weib *woman, wife*.
 { cild . G. kind *child*.

Masculine: mona G. mond *moon*.

Feminine: sunne G. sonne *sun*.

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár G. ahre (f.) *ear of corn*.

— fræsten G. feste (f.) *fastness*.

— fyðer G. feder (f.) *feather, wing*.

NOUNS—GENDER

Neut.	mód	G. muth	(m.) <i>mind, mood.</i>
—	twig	G. zweig	(m.) <i>twig.</i>
—	wæpen	G. waffe	(f.) <i>weapon.</i>
—	westen	G. wuste	(f.) <i>waste, desert.</i>
—	wín ⁽¹⁾	G. wein	(m.) <i>wine.</i>
Masc.	craeft	G. kraft	(f.) <i>pouer, craft, art.</i>
—	ende	G. ende	(n.) <i>end.</i>
—	feld	G. fela	(n.) <i>field.</i>
—	here	G. heer	(n.) <i>army.</i>
—	lust	G. lust	(f.) <i>lust, pleasure.</i>
—	mere ⁽²⁾	G. meer	(n.) <i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem.	bóc	G. buch	(n.) <i>book.</i>
—	hælu ⁽³⁾	G. heil	(m.) <i>health, salvation.</i>
—	heorte ⁽⁴⁾	G. herz	(n.) <i>heart.</i>
—	ge sýhð	G. ge-sicht	(n.) <i>sight.</i>
—	turf	G. torf	(n.) <i>turf.</i>
—	wiht	G. wicht	(m.) <i>wright, being.</i>

Moreover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -scipe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód⁽⁵⁾ *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sá *sea* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(1) Oív-og masc. L. vin-um, neut. (2) L. mare, neut.

(3) L. sal-us, fem. (4) Kapð-ia fem. L. cor, neut.

(5) G. flúth fem.; see masc. and fem., band neut and masc.

FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in -tl, -ed, -incle, and diminutives in -en; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in -a, -m, -ls, -ad, -od, -e (from verbs) and -ling; likewise all forming the genitive singular in -a, or the nominative plural in -as are masculine.

III. Nouns in -æd, -ud, -ð (after a consonant) -eo, -u (of quality from adjectives) -e (from adjectives) -ung, and -leást are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus *wif-man woman* is masculine. (1)

II.—Declension.

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex,(2) the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each(3).

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. -e in the neuter, -a in the masculine, and -e in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential -e or -u.

(1) By the same rule G. *frauen-zimmer* *female* is neut., manns-person *man* fem.

(2) In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

(3) For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30

Table of the Inflection of Nouns.

SIMPLE ORDER.

DECLENSION I.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-e	-a	-e
Accus (4)	-e	-an	-an
Abl & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an

	PLURAL.		
	Nom. & Acc.	Abl. & Dat.	Gen.
	-an	-um	-ena

COMPLEX ORDER.

DECLENSION II.

DECLENSION III.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—	— (-e)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-e	— (-e)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-e	-e	-e	-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e	-es	-a	-e

	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
	N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.	N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.
	-as	-um	-a	-u	-um	-a
	-um	-um	-a(-ena)	-a	-um	-a(-ena)
	-a	-a	-a(-ena)	-a	-um	-a(-ena)

(4) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular, but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -ena, the Complex in -a. (¹)

III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e; the nominative plural is formed in -an (²) The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

(¹) Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simpl. gen. plural.

(²) G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-n) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—eágē *eye*, steorra *star*, tunge *tongue*.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	SINGULAR.		
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	eág-e	steorr-a	tung-e
Accus.	eág e	steorr-an	tung an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Gen	eag-an	steorr an	tung-an
	PLURAL.		
N. & Acc	eág-an	steorr an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-um	steorr-um	tung-um
Gen	eág-ena	steorr-ena	tung-ena.

In like manner are declined éáre *ear*, clíwe *clew*, bearra *lord*, guma *man*, wyrhta *night*, workman, tíma *time*, draca *dragon*, hlísa *fame*; hlæfdige *lady*, círice (*circe*) *church*, wuce *week*, eorðe *earth*, wise *wise*, way⁽²⁾ &c. Also some contracted nouns, as, freá *lord* (masc.) tá *toe*, beó⁽³⁾ *bee* (fem.), making freán &c. plural tán, táum, taena, beon, beóna &c. Æ' *law*, sá *sea*⁽⁴⁾, and éá *river* (likewise fein) are in declinable, except sometimes gen. eás⁽⁵⁾, nom. plural ean.

⁽²⁾ Manna *man* and heofone *heaven* are much less common than man III. 2 and heofon II. 2.

⁽³⁾ G. zehe, biene, not contracted.

⁽⁴⁾ Sá is also declinable, as I. 2.

⁽⁵⁾ All A. S. nouns originally formed the genitive in -s, see p. 70, n. 4.

IV.—*Complex Order. Declension II.*

CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains many neuters ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—leáf *leaf*, word *word*.

SINGULAR.		
Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-e	word-e
Gen.	leáf-es	word-es
PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-um	word-um
Gen.	leáf-a	word-a.

Thus are declined eár *ear of corn*, hús *house*, deór (¹) *beast*, ge hát *promise*, hors *horse*, spel *story, spell*, wíf *woman, wife*, bearn *child, bairn*, lamb *lamb &c.*; feoh (²) *fee, money, cattle* makes feo, feos.

V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises all regular masculines ending in a consonant, all complex ones in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(¹) Hence deer—“Rats and mice, and such small deer.”

(²) Comp. L pec-us, pec-unia; our *fee* is *money only*, G. vieh *cattle only*.

Examples—dáel *part, deal*, ende *end*, dæg *day*.

SINGULAR.

N. & A. dáel	end-e'	dæg
A. & D. dáel-e	end-e	dæg
Gen. dáel-es	end-es	dæg es

PLURAL.

N. & A. dáel-as	end-as	dag-as
A. & D. dáel-um	end-um	dag-um
Gen. dáel-a	end-a	dag-a.

Thus also cyning (*cīng*) *king*, smid̄ *smith*, stan *stone*, weg *way*, freo-dóm *freedom*, munuc-hád *monkhood*; mete *meat*, rædere *reader*, weordscipe *worship*; stæf (²) *staff, letter*, mæg *kinsman*, &c. Participial nouns in -end usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur alike, and make -ra in the gen. plural. Freónd *friend*, and feónd *foe, fiend* have plur. frýnd, fýnd, freónd, feónd, or treóndas &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or) are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus engel *angel*, dryhten *lord*, ealdor *prince*, inake *ingle*, engles, englas &c. dryhtne &c. Heofen (-on) *heaven* has abl. and dat. heofene, heofone, or þeofne and so on. Monad̄ (*mond̄*) *month* forms monðe &c. Winter *winter* has abl. and dat. wintra, nom. pl. wintras, or winter. Feld *field*, ford *ford*, and sumer (-or) *summer* make abl. and dat. felda, forda, sumera.

²) Comp. G. stab, stabe, &c. G. buch-stab is letter.

Fæder father is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w, as, *beáh ring*, *beáge*, *beágés &c.*; *bealu bale*, *injury*, *bealwe*, and the like a few drop the -h, as, *feorh hfr*, *feore* &c. Those in sc often take x (c) in the plural; as, *fisc fish*, *fixas &c.*; sometimes throughout; *fix*, *fixe* &c.

VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in a.

Examples—*stefen* (*stefn*) *voice*, *spræc* *speech*.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>stefen</i>	<i>spræc</i>
Acc.	<i>stefn-e</i>	<i>spræc-e</i>
A. & D.	<i>stefn-e</i>	<i>spiāc-e</i>
Gen.	<i>stefn-e</i>	<i>spra c-e</i>

PLURAL.

N. & A.	<i>stefn-a</i>	<i>spiāc-a</i>
A. & D.	<i>stefn-um</i>	<i>spræc-um</i>
Gen.	<i>stefn-a(-ena)</i>	<i>spiāc-a(-ena)</i>

Thus are declined *sáwel soul*, *wylen female slave*, *frófer comfort*, *ge-samnung assembly*, *écnys eternity*, *lag law*, *stów place*, *þeód people*, *lár lore*, *myrd mirth*, *bén prayer*, &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, *sáwl*, *wyln*, *frófr*. A single final consonant after a

short vowel is doubled; as *syn sin*, accus. &c *synne*. The gen. plur is sometimes in -ena. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the abl. and dat. in -a. Hand *hand*, makes accus. hand, abl. and dat. *handa*. Mīht *might*, tīd *time*, tide, woruld *world*, have the accus. like the nom., woruld sometimes makes gen. *worldes*.⁽¹⁾ Niht *night*, and wiht *wight* remain unchanged in the accus. singular, and noun. plural.

VII.—Declension III.

CLASS I.

The Third Declension, first Class, contains all complex neuters in -e, all in -u, all neuter dissyllables in er (-or), -el (-ol), and -en, some in ed (-od), and many monosyllables in a consonant. The plural is in -u (-o), often changed to -a; some monosyllables change æ, and a few ea, into a in the plural.

Examples—treów *tree*, ríce *realm*, fæt *vat*, vessel.

SINGULAR.

N. & A. treów	ríc-e	fæt
A. & D. treów-e	ríc-e	fæt-e
Gen. treów-es	ríc-es	fæt-es
PLURAL.		
N. & A. treów-u	ríc-u	fæt-u
A. & D. treów-um	ríc-um	fæt-um
Gen. treów-a	ríc-a	fæt-a.

⁽¹⁾ See page 13, n. 5 above.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*⁽¹⁾ *devil*,
wæter water, *ge-writ writing*, *writ*; *wíte punishment*,
a-mære boundary, *spere spear*, *melu meal*, *flour*;
æd bath *glæs*⁽²⁾ *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, make *heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c.; *nýten* *beast*, *neat*, *weofod* *altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in -en sometimes double the n in the oblique cases; as, *wéstén* *desert*, *wéstenné* &c. *Cíld child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru* (-a)⁽³⁾, *cealfru*, *ægru*, the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *þýstru* *darkness*, *lendenu* *loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in -u take w, and aie usually contracted, forming the plural in a, as, *searw* *array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes*; plur. *searwa* &c.

VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in -u (-o), forming their plural in -a, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in -er (-or), changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making -u (-o, -a) in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

(1) *De o fol* is often masculine.

(2) Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer*, *glas*, *gläser*.

(3) Hence *child* en, P. *child-er*, comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er*, *kalb*, *kaib-er*; ei, *ei-er*. D. *kind*, *kind-er-en*. *kalf*, *kalv-er-en*, *ei*, *ej-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

SINGULAR

N & A. sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D. sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen. sun-a	bróðer	mann-e

PLURAL

N. & A. sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D. sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen. sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglín; móder mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister*: *fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man-making fét, téð.* (5) Sun-ena is rare.

Leóde (G. leute) *people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen*, and a few more in -e with no singular, make leódum, leóda, &c.

IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in -u or -o, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in -ena.

Examples—*denu vale, bóc book, burh burgn, town.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. den-u	{	bóc	burh
Acc. den-e			
A. & D. den-e		béc	byrig
Gen. den-e		béc	burg-e

(4) Comp. G. *mann, manner, fuss, fusse, zahn, zhne,*

PLURAL

N. & A. den-a	béc	byrig
A. & D. den-um	bóc-um	burg-um
Gen. den-a (-ena)	bóc-a	burg-a.

Like *denu* are declined *lufu lōe*, *gifu gift, grace*, *snóru daughter-in-law*, *caru care*, *lagu water*, &c. *Mænigeo* (-u) *many, multitude*, *yldo age, eld*, *braédo breadth*, and some others in -o are in -e inflexible, except abl. and dat. plur. *mænigum*. *Duru door* makes abl. and dat. sing. *dura*. Collectives in -waru, as *burh-waru town's-folk*, form plur. -wāre, gen. -wara or -warena. *Mús mouse*, *lús louse*, *cú cow*, *gós goose*, *bróc breeches*, follow *bóc*, making plur. *mýs mice*, *lýs lice*, *cý kye*, *gés⁽¹⁾ geese*, *bréc*. *Cú* sometimes has gen. sing *cús*,⁽²⁾ gen plur. *cúna*. *Turf turf*, and *furh furrow*, follow *burh*, making *tyrf*, &c.

CHAPTER III.

I.—*Adjectives*

As in German &c. have a Definite and an Indefinite inflection: the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, by any other demonstrative, or by a possessive pronoun; the latter always else. There are three Declensions, one for the Definite form, agreeing closely with the Simple Order, two for the In-

(¹) Comp. G. *huch*, *bucher*; *maus*, *mause*; *laus*, *lause*; *kuh*, *kuhe*; *gans*, *ganse*

(²) See page 70, n. 4.

definite, answering, though not so exactly, to the Complex Order of Nouns.

II.—Definite Declension.

Example—(gód *good*) þæt gód-e⁽³⁾ &c *the good*.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Noñ. þæt gód-e*	se gód-a	seó gód-e
Acc. þæt gód-e	þone gód-an	þá gód-an
Abl. þý gód-an		þý gód-an
Dat þám gód-an		þáre gód-an
Gen. þæs gód-an		þáre gód-an

PLURAL.		
N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.
þa gód-an		
	þám gód-um	
		þára gód-ena.

This declension is used for all adjectives, participles, and pronouns in general; participles present however take -ia instead of -ena in the genitive plural. Monosyllables commonly change æ to a throughout; as, smæl *small*, þæt smale, se smala, seó smale *the small*, and so on. Adjectives in -h, as heáh *high*, usually change it to g when the case-ending is a vowel, as, þæt heág-e, &c ; otherwise the h is dropt; as, abl. &c. heán. Those in -u (-o), as near-u *narrow*, take w throughout; as, þæt near-we, &c⁽⁴⁾

*(3) Comp. Nouns I. 1, 2, 3.

*(4) Comp. Nouns II. 2, 3. III. 1.

III.—*Indefinite Declension I.*Example—gód(¹) *good.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. gód	gód	gód
Acc. gód	gód-ne	gód-e
Abl. gód-e		gód-e
Dat. gód-um		gód-re
Gen. gód-es		gód-re

PLURAL.		
Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A. gód(-u)	gód-e	
A. & D. gód-um		
Gen. gód-ra.		

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, wyrð-e *worth, worthy*, dýg-el *dark*, sprec-ol *talkative*, menn-isc *human*, ge-wís *sure*, sóð *true*, nooth, leóht *light*, heard hard, seóc *sick*, wrec *wretched*, fæst *fast*, &c.

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; wyrð-ne, wyrð-um, wyrð-re, &c

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. heá-nne, nearo-ne, abl. &c. fem. heá-re, near-we or near-e; gen. plur. heá-ra, near-wa or near-a.

(¹) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

IV.—*Indefinite Declension II.*Example—smæl⁽²⁾ *small*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. smæl	smæl	smal-u
Acc. smæl	smæl-ne	smal-e
Abl. ^o smal-e		smale
Dat. smal-um		smæl-re
Gen. smal-es		smæl-re

PLURAL.	
Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A. smal-u	smal-e
A. & D. smal-um	
Gen. smæl-ra.	

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) &c., most adjectives with derived endings, and participles past of the Complex Order; some of both the latter, however, follow Declension I. As, læt *late*, *slow*, swær *heavy*, glæd *glad*, bær *bare*, swæs *sweet*, *dear*, til *good*, eád-ig *blessed*, *prosperous*, fær-líc *sudden*, *dangerous*, ge-sib-sum *penceable*, mæg-er *meagre*, hlutt-or *clear*, fæg-en *glad*, *fain*. Some dissyllables are contracted in certain forms, as, hál-ig *holy*, hál-ge, hál-ges, &c., but gen. plur. hál-igra and the like.

(1) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding -or and -ost (¹), (E. and G. -er and -est), to the indefinite form; as, leóf, leóf-or, leóf-ost *dear, dear-er, dear-est* (G. lieb, lieb-er, lieb-est): æ usually becomes a; as, smæl, smal-or, smal-ost, *small, small-er, small-est*. (G. schmal, schmal-er, schmal-est.) The ending -or is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in -re, -ra, -re, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (þæt) leóf-re, (se) leóf-ra, (seó) leóf-re (*the dearer*; (G. das &c. lieb-re) (þæt) smæl-re &c. (*the smaller*; (G. das &c. schmal-re). The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in -ost, or -est, (also the adverbial form), the latter in -oste, -osta, -oste, or -este &c.; as, leóf-ost *dearest*, þæt leóf-oste, or leóf-este &c. *the dearest*; (G. das &c. lieb-ste.)

TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	Adjective.	
heard		heard-ost
hard	{ (þæt) heard-re	hard-est
þæt heard-e	{ (the) hard-er	þæt heard-oste
<i>the hard</i>		<i>the hard-est</i>
	Adverb.	
heard-e	heard-or	heard-ost
hard-ly	hard-li-er	hard-li-est.

(¹) Comp. the L. comparative -ior; Gr. superlative ὅτερος, &c.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; é into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me (?) (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang (?)	lengie (leng)	lengest
long	longer	longest
strang	stiengie (strangor)	strengeſt
strong	stronger	strongeſt
hraðed (hraðe)	hiædīe (hraðor)	hraðoſt
quick, rath	quicker (rather)	quickeſt
eald	yldre	yldeſt
old	elder	eldeſt
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhſt, nehſt, next
nigh	nigher	nighesṭ, next
heáh	hýrre	hýhſt, héhſt
high	hýher	hýhesṭ
eáð	eáði e (éðre. éð)	eáðoſt
easy	easier	easiest
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrreſt
far	further	furtheſt
geong	gyngre	gyngesṭ
young	younger	youngesṭ

(?) Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

(?) Comp. G. lang, langer, langſt; alt, alter, altest, nahe, naher, nächſt, hoch, hoher, hochſt; jung, junger, jungſt, fort, furter, sanft, sanſter, sanſteſt, eher, erat, gut, woh, bessen, heft, mehr, meiſt, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sceort	scyrtre	scyrttest
short	shorter	shortest
(ford ^d , furd ^d) (forth)	furðre (furðor)	
sóft	séftre (séft)	séftest
soft	softer	softest
ær (¹)	áerre (árer, -or)	árest (-ost)
early (ere)	carlier, sooner	(erst) first
gód (wel)	betere (bet)	betest, betst
good (well)	better	best
yfel	wyrse (wyrs)	wyrrest, wyrst
evil	worse	worst
micel	máre (má) ^(²)	mást
great, mickle	greater, more	greatest, most
lytel (lyt)	læsse (læs)	læst
little	less	least
forme (fore)		fyrnest, fyrist
former, fore		foremost, first
læt, læteme (late)	lætre (lator)	latost, lætemest
late, slow	later, latter	latest, last
síð, síðeme	síðre (síðor)	síðost, síðemest
late, (since)		
nordëme, (nord ^d) ^(³)	(nordor)	nordemest
northern, north	-	northmost
úfeme (úp)	úfere (úfor)	ýfemest
high (up)	upper	upmost
æfteme (æfter)	æftre	æftemest
aft, after	after	aftmost

(¹) Hence O. or, "or ever.

(²) For mār, to which we have returned: more, O. was mo-

(³) Some of these are often formed in -weard; as, n rðe-weard
northern, north-ward, úfe-weard (úp-we-
-ward. e

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
hind	hinder	hindmost
inneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
inner (in)	inner	inmost
úteme (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
outer (out)	outer, utter	outmost, utmost
midd, midme	,	midmost
mid	,	midmost
niðeme(niðer)	niðre (niðror)	niðemest
low (down)	nether	nethmost.

CHAPTER IV.

I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are ic *I*, þú *thou*, hit, he, heó *it, he, she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number

SINGULAR.

N.	ic (4)	þú (5)
A.	me	þe
A.&D. me		þe
G.	mín	þín

N.	DUAL	PLURAL.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
wit (6)	we	git	ge	
A.	unc	ús	inc	eów
A.&D. unc	ús	inc	eów	
G.	uncer	úre	incer	eówer

(4) Comp. éy-w, με, &c. L. eg o, me, G. ich, mir, wir, (D. wij) uns, unser.

(5) Comp. (Dor.) rv, rs; L. tu, te; G. du, dir, euch, &c. D. gjij, &c.

(6) Remark a peculiar construction with the dual.—wit Scilling *two*, viz. *I* and Scilling; healf þæs cinges, healf uncer Bretinges, half the king's, half mine and Breting's.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit ⁽¹⁾	he	heō
A. hit	hīne	hī
A. & D. him		hire
G. his		hire

PLURAL		
N. & A. hī		
A. & D. him.		
G. hīra		

Meh, *mec* (L. *mihi*, G. *mich*) and þeh, þec (G. *dich*) sometimes occur for me and þe likewise the poetical úsīh, úsic, and eówīh, eówic for ús and eów; and uncit and incit, for unc and inc.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, *ic me reste* *I rest me* (*myself*), *þa þeówas wyrmdon hīg*, *the servants were warming them* (*themselves*). *Sylf self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, *ic sylf* or *sylfa* *I myself*; *fian me sylfum of myself*, *þū sylf thou thyself*; *we sylfe we ourselves*, &c.; *seó sylfe tíd the same time*.⁽²⁾ Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before *sylf*; as, (ic) *me sylf I myself*; *him-sylf he himself*.⁽³⁾

(1) Comp. ð, ð, ðv, oð, að, L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, n, G es, ihn, ihm, ihr, D. het, hñ, &c.

(2) Comp. G *ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit*, &c.

(3) Like F. *moi-même, lui-même*, hence seemingly *my-self, thy-self* &c.. *self* is properly no more a noun than *abrebat*, L. *ipse*, or F. *même*.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, *mín* (G. mein) *mine, my*; *þín* (G. dein) *thine, thy*; *úre* (G. unser) *our*; *incer, eówer* (G. euer) *your*: like other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in -er are usually contracted; as *uncre, eówres*, and the like U'e forms *úrum, úres, &c*; but remains unchanged in the whole feminine singular. The poetical *úser* (*ússer*) for *úre* is thus declined:—

Neut	Masc	Fem
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>
A. <i>úser</i>	<i>úserne</i>	<i>ússe</i>
A. & D. <i>ússum</i>		<i>ússe</i>
G. <i>ússes</i>		<i>ússe</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. <i>ússe, úser</i>		
A & D. <i>ússum</i>		
G. <i>ússa.</i>		

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged: *his, its, his, hire her, hira their*. To make these reflective, the genitive of *sylf* agreeing with the pronoun, or the indefinite adjective *ágen* *own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, *þín sylfes bearn thine own son*; *tó his ágenre þearfe to his own need*. *Sín* occurs in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. *sein*, for L. *ejus*, but for L. *suus* only.

III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are þæt, se, seó *that*, likewise the relative *which*, *who*, *that*, and the article *the*; (¹) and þis, þes, þeós *this*.

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut	Masc.	Fem.
N. þæt ⁽²⁾	se	seó	þis ⁽³⁾	þes	þeós
A. <u>þæt</u>	<u>þone</u>	<u>þá</u>	<u>þis</u>	<u>þisne</u>	<u>þás</u>
Abl	þý	þý	þise	þisse	
D.	þám	þáre	þisum	þisse	
G.	<u>þæs</u>	<u>þáre</u>	<u>þises</u>	<u>þisse</u>	
N. & A.	þa			þás	
A. & D.	þám			þisum	
G.	þára			þissa	

þæne, þám, þáre, þára, are sometimes used for þone, þám, þáre, þára; likewise þæs for þás; the s in þise, &c. is often doubled, þissere and þissera occur also for þisse and þissa. The indeclinable þe is used for all cases of þæt, se, seó, as a relative; combined with it it forms þæt-te⁽⁴⁾ *that which*, se-þe *he that*, seó-þe *she that*. Þæt, se, seó is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but þe commonly stands as

(¹) Comp. the threefold use of G. das, der, die.

(²) Comp. ro, ó, ñ, rov, ra, rot, rat, G. das, den, dem, der, des, &c. D. dat, &c. From seó comes she (G. sie), from þa they, þám them, þára their.

(³) Comp. G. dies, &c.; þás and þæs have become those and these.

(⁴) Þætte is also that (conjunction) G. dass.

relative in the second place ; as, þæt micle ge-teld
þe Moises worhte, *the great tent that Moses made.*

þe is sometimes used along with hit, &c. as a relative ; as, þe þurh hine *through whom.*

Swá is sometimes used (like G. so) as an indeclinable relative

Ylc same, follows the indefinite declension.

Swylc such, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially, *as, Ælc þing on-gitan swylc swylce hit is *to understand each thing so as it is.*

IV.—*Interrogatives.*

The Interrogative Pronouns are hwæt, hwá? *what?*
who? hwylc? *which?* hwæðer *whether?* which? The first has no plural, and is thus declined :

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. hwæt	hwá
Acc. hwæt	hwone (hwæne)
Abl. hwý	
Dat. hwám (hwæm)	
Gen. hwæs (5)	

It answers to L. quis not qui, and is never used as a relative. with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive ; as, hwæt yfeles? *what evil?* it is also (like G. et-was, was) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little* ; as, hwæt lytles *some little.*

(6) From hwám and hwæs, are *whom* and *whose.*

V.—*Indefinites.*

The Indefinite pronouns are swá hwæt(-swá) *what-so-ever*, swá-hwá (-swá) *who-so-ever*, swá-hwylc (-swá) *which-so-ever*, æg hwæt (ge-hwæt), æg-hwylc, &c. *whatsoever*. &c which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are ælc, *each*, *every one*, eall *all*, æníg *any*, næníg *none* *whaterer*, án-lipig (æn-lipig) *single*, *alone*, &c. Ge-noh *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. A'n *one*, a, and sum *some*, a, *a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed sum placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it; as, tíf-tyna sum *one of sixteen*, *one with fifteen others*. Manig (mæníg) *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. manega. Fela *much* *many* is indeclinable: feáwa (feá) *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. feáwum, gen. feára, both often govern a genitive plural; as, mágma fela *many treasures*; feá worda *few words*. Man (*man*) is used (like G. *man*, and F. *on*) (¹) indefinitely for *one*, *they*; as, Me man sægde *they told me* (G. *man sagte mir*). From wiht (*wuht*) *creature*, *being*, (*wight*, *whit*) are formed á-wiht (á-wuht) contracted to áwht, áht *anything*, *ought*; and ná-n-wiht (-wuht) náwht, náht (²) *nothing*, *nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are óðer (-o r) *other*, *second* (L. *alius*, and alter for *secundus*), áwðer, áðer *one of two* (L. *alter duorum*), náwðer (naðor), *neither of two* (L. *neuter*), ægðer

(¹) Formerly *hom*, from L. *homo*.(²) Hence *not*. like G. *nicht* from *ne-wicht*.

either, each of two. Oðer forms its oblique cases fem. sing. óðre, it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

VI — Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.

GREEK	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
éν	un-um	een	án	one	ein
δuo	duo	twee	twá	two	zwei
τρια	tua	drie	þreo	three	drei
κεττροƿε (3)	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
πεντε	quinque	vijf	fif	five	funf
ξ	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
έπτα	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
όκτω	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
έννεα	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
δεκα	decem	tien	tyn	ten	zehn
DUTCH		A. S.		ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
elf		endlufon		eleven	eิlf
twaalf		twelf		twelve	zwolf
der-tien		þreo-tyne		thir-teen	drei-zehn
veertien		feower-tyne		fourteen	vierzehn
vijftien		fif-tyne		fifteen	funfzehn
zestien		six-tyne		sixteen	sechzehn
zeventien		seofon-tyne		seventeen	siebzehn
achtien		eahta-tyne		eighteen	achtzehn
negentien		nigon-tyne		nineteen	neunzehn
twin-tig		twen-tig		twen-ty	zwan-zig
dertig		þry-ttig		thirty	drei-ssig
veertig		feower-tig		forty	viezig

(3) Αεολ. for τεσσαρα.

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	fíi-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzicg
tachtig (¹)	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{ hund, hundred, hund-teontig }	hundred	hundert
	hund-endlufontig 110		
	hund-twelftig 120		
duizend	þúsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. ænne; thus too nán *none*. Used definitely, áne, ána, áne, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. Twá (²) and þeo are thus declined:—

	Neut.	Masc	Fem.		Neut.	Masc	Fem.
N. & A	twá (tú)	twegen (³)	twá		þeo	þry	þeo
A. & D.	twám (twéam)				þrym		
G.	twegra (twega)				þreora		

Bá, begen, bá *both*, follows twá; prefixed to twá it forms bá-twá (bú-tú) (⁴) which is indeclinable. The numbers feower to twelf inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, ealle seofone *all seven*; án of þám twelfum *one of the twelve*; án

(¹) The t- is probably a remnant of the prefix hond- retained before the vowel.

(²) S tua. G. zwei, two.

(³) Twain. G. zween.

(⁴) Hence *both*, G. beide; comp. Italian ambe-due.

pissa fífa *one of these five.* Those above eahta usually govern a genitive. Twentig and the others in -tig make abl and dat. -tigum, gen -tigra. Hund prefixed to the tens after sixtig (answering to -kvar-a, L. -gint-a) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes before; as, scipa án hund and eahtatig, *of ships one hundred and eighty.* Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1; hundred and þúsend, III. 1.

Units are placed before tens, as, six and fíftig. *six and fifty.* In numbers above a hundred, the smaller stands last, and the noun is repeated; as, Hund-teontig wintra and seofon and feowertig wintra, *a hundred winters and seven and forty winters.*⁽⁵⁾

Wintre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting age; as, fram twi-wintrum cilde, *from the child of two years.*

VII.—*Ordinal Numbers.*

pæt forme, se forma, seó forme	<i>first</i>
pæt, se, seó óðer	<i>second</i>
pæt þry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry dde ⁽⁶⁾	<i>thir-d</i>
feor-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>four-th</i>
fíf-te, -ta, -te	<i>fifth</i>
six-te, — —	<i>sixth</i>
seofo-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>seventh</i>
eahtoþe — —	<i>eighth</i>
nigoþe	<i>ninth</i>

(5) The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

(6) Comp. *rpi-rof*, L. *ter-tius*, G. *dri-tte*, *vier-te*, &c.

teōþe	<i>tenth</i>
endlyf-te	<i>eleventh</i>
twelfte	<i>twelfth</i>
þry-tteóðe	<i>thirteenth</i>
feower-teóðe	<i>fourteenth</i>
fif-teóðe	<i>fifteenth</i>
six-teóðe	<i>sixteenth</i>
seofon-teóðe	<i>seventeenth</i>
eahta-teóðe	<i>eighteenth</i>
nigon teóðe	<i>nineteenth</i>
twentig-oðe	<i>twentieth</i>
þryttigoðe	<i>thirtieth</i>
feowertigoðe	<i>fortieth</i>
fiftigoðe	<i>fiftieth</i>
sixtigoðe	<i>sixtieth</i>
nund-seontigoðe	<i>seventieth</i>
hund-eahtatigoðe	<i>eightieth</i>
hund-nigontigoðe	<i>ninetieth</i>
hund-teontigoðe	<i>hundredth</i>
hund-endlufontigoðe	<i>110th</i>
hund-twelftigoðe	<i>120th</i>

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first when cardinals, last when ordinals; as, *án* and *þryttigoðe* *one and thirtieth*; *þý twentigoðan dæge* and *þý feordan dæge Septembris, on the twenty and fourth day of September*.

Healf *half* placed after an ordinal number (like G. *halb*) reduces it by half; as, *óðer-healf* (lit *second-half*) *one and a half*, (G. *andert-halb*); *þridde-healf*

(lit *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. *dritte-halb*).⁽¹⁾ A'n, twá, þeo, form æn-e *once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, þry-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, síð *a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four, five, &c. times*, (þý) *forman*, óðre, þryddan, &c. síðe *the first, second, third, &c. time*.

CHAPTER V.

I.—*Verbs. Conjugation.*

THERE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; ⁽²⁾ the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αειν, -εειν, and -οειν, and to the Latin in -are, -ere, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ere, &c.⁽³⁾ The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.⁽⁴⁾ The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

(1) Comp. ημίσυ-τριτος, L. *sesqui-alter, -tertius.*

(2) Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

(3) See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

(4) E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.

II.—Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.

SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—luf-ian *to love*, G. lieb-en; hýr-an *to hear*, G. hör-en; tell-an *to tell, reckon*, G. zahl-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part past.
Class I.	ic luf-ige	— luf-ode	(ge-)luf-od
	I lōre	— lov-ed	lov-ed
	G. ich lieb-e	— lieb-te	ge lieb-t
Class II.	hýr-e	hýr-de	(ge-)hýr-ed
	hear	hear-d	hear-d
	G. hör-e	hör-te	ge hor t
Class III.	tell-e	teal-de	(ge-)teal-d
	tell	tol d	tol d
	G. zahl-e	zahl-te	ge-zahl-t.

COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II

Examples—brec-an *to break*, G. brech-en; heald-an *to hold*, G. halt-en; drag-an *to draw, drag*, G. trag-en

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	brec-e	bræc	(ge-)broc-en
	break	brake	brok-en
	G. brech-e	brach	ge-broch en
Class II.	heald-e	heold	(ge-)heald-en
	hold	held	hold-en
	G. halt-e	hielt	ge-halt-en
Class III.	drag e	dróh	(ge-)drag-en
	draw	drew	draw-n
	G. trag-e	trug	ge-trag-en.

CONJUGATION III.

Examples—bind-an *to bind*, G. bind-en ; dríf-an *to drive*, G. treib-en ; clúf-an *to cleave*, G. klieb-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past
Class I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	bind	bound	bound-en
	G. bind e	band	ge-bund-en
Class II.	dríf e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	drive	drore	driv-en
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb en
Class III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clof-en
	cleave	clave	clor-en
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

III.—Simple Order, or Conjugation I.

CLASS I. CLASS II. CLASS III
INDICATIVE MODE.

		Present	
Sing.	ic luf-ięe (¹)	hýr-e	tell-e
	þú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-að	hýr ð	tel-ð
Plur. we, ge, hí	luf-iad	hýr-að	tell-að
	luf-ięe	hýr-e	tell-e
		Imperfect	
Sing.	ic luf-ođe	hýr-de	teal-de
	þú luf-ođest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ođe	hýr-de	teal-de
Pl.	we, ge, hí luf-ođon	hýr-don	teal-don

(¹) Comp. *loue*, *lou-est*, *lou-eth*, G. lieb-e, lieb-est, lieb-et, &c L am-o-as, -at, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing. luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur. luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on
Imperfect.		
Sing. luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur. luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don
IMPERATIVE MODE.		
Sing. luf-a	hýr	tel-e
Plur. { luf-iad { luf-ige	{ hýr-ad { hýr-e	{ tell-ad { tell-e
INFINITIVE MODE.		
Pres. luf-ian	hýr-an	tell an
Gerund tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres. lufigende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-) luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, we lufiað *we love*, hýrað *hear*; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, telle ge *tell ye?* The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in -an or -en; as, lufian, hýrden, and the like. The gerund, which is always preceded by tó, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supines, infinitive future, active and passive, &c., as, Come þú ús tó for-spillanne? *camest thou to destroy us?* L. nos perditum. Hwæder is éðre tó cweðanne? *whether is easier to say?* L. facilius dictu. Eart þú se-þe tó eumenne eart? *art thou he that is (art) to come?*

L. *qui venturus est.* Heó býð tó lufigenne⁽¹⁾ *she is (must be, or ought) to be lored,* L. *amanda est.* The infinitive of the first Class is often formed in -igan, sometimes in -igean, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in some other forms with little or no change of pronunciation. The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes -enne for -anne. Ge may be prefixed to any part of verbs in general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect, and especially with the participle past, though not, as in German, to be considered the sign of the latter.⁽²⁾

IV.—*Class I.*

Like lufian are conjugated:

Present	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
hatige	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
losige	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
clypige	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
fullige	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
fúlige	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
cunnige	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
wacige ⁽³⁾	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
hangige ⁽⁴⁾	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
hýrike	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
hergige	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
macige	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
bletsige	bletsode	bletsod	<i>blesse</i>

(1) Hence the phrases “house to let,” “he is to blame,” &c.

(2) Ge- is seldom used before another prefix.

(3) Neut. L. *vigilare*, act. *weccan*.

(4) Neut. L. *pendere*, act. *hangan, hóan*.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having e for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in -ede and ed, as well as -ode and od; as, herian *to praise*, seglian *to sail*, ge-fremian *to profit*, which make herede, (ge-)hered, or herode, herod; seglede, and the like: -ode and -od are sometimes changed into -ade and -ad. Swerian *to swear*, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. swerede or swór *swore*; imp. subj. swóre; imper. swera or swere; part. past (ge-)sworen *sworn*. Folgian, fyligan, or fylian *to follow*, has imperf. folgode, fyligde, or fylide; imper. folga or fylig

V — *Class II.*

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in -de and -ed, or in -te and -t, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. t, p, c, x, requiring -te and -t, the soft, viz. d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s, taking -de and -ed; as,

Present.	Impf.	Part past.	
méte	métte	(ge-)mét	meet(<i>met</i>)
lette	lette	lett	let, hinder
dyppe	dypte	dypt	dip(-t)
tæce	tæhte	tæht	teach(<i>taught</i>)
lixe	lixte	lixt	gleam(-ed)
læde	lædde	læded	lead(<i>led</i>)
sende	sende	send	send
cýde	cýdde	cýded	make known
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	believe(-d)

Present.	Impert.	Past	past
wrége	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
be-láewe	be-láewde	be-láewed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
fylle	fylde	fylléd	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
týme	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
wéne	wénde	wéned	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
lære	lárde	láred	<i>teach</i>
ráse	rásde	rásed	<i>rush(-ed).</i>

Some verbs in -gan are contracted, as, þreagan, þreán *to vex, reproach*, tweógan, tweón *to doubt*. pres. þreage or þreá, þreást, þreáð; pl. þreagad, þreáð, &c.; tweóge or tweó, tweóst, tweóð, &c.; imperf. þreáde, tweóde; part. past þreád, tweód.

The second and third persons singular sometimes make -est, -ed, especially when many consonants might otherwise meet; as, nemne (*I*) *name*, nemnest, nemned; imperf. nemde some have both forms; as, láde, láetst, láet, or ládest, láded; part. past láeded or láed. Verbs with s, d, and t form the third person in -t; as, ráse, rást sende, sent; méte, mét: those with ð in ð, as cýðe, cýð imperf. cýðde or cýðde; p. past cýðed or cýð. Verbs in this and the following classes with a double characteristic, drop one letter and take -e in the imperative; as, dyppe, dype, and the like. To this class belong several transitives, derived from intransitives of the Complex Order; as, bærnan *to burn* (act.), from byrnan *to burn* (neut.); drençan ('') *to drench*, from drinçan *to drink*; fyllan *to fell*, from

(') Comp. G. tranken, fallen, senken, setzen, from trinken, fallen, sinken, sitzen

feallan to fall; a-ráran to rear, from a-rísan to arise; sencan to sink (act.), from síncan to sink (neut.); settan to set, from sittan to sit; ærnan to let run, from yrnan to run. Lybban to live, and hycgan to think, borrow some forms from leofian, and hogian: they are thus conjugated:—

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybon
3. leofad̄	Imperf. leofode
plur. { lybbad̄	plur. leofodon
{ lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imperf. leofode(-st)	plur. { lybbad̄
plur. leofodon	{ lybbe
Infin pres lybban	Part pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P past (ge)leofod

Hæbban or habban(!) to have, has some forms as if from hafian: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres 1 hæbbe (habbe)	Subj pres. habbe (hæbbe)
2 hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfd̄ (hafad̄)	Imperf. hæfde
plur. { hæbbad̄(hafad̄)	plur. hæfdon
{ hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imperf. hæfde(-st)	plur. { hæbbad̄
plur. hæfdon	{ habbe
Inf. pres. hæbban(habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past(ge-)hæfed, hæfd.

The first person present is sometimes in poetry hafu

([¶]) Comp. throughout L. hab-ere, G. hab-en.

þrhafo Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not, has* an Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following habban.

VI.—*Class III.*

The third Class changes e into ea, é into ö, &c. in the imperfect, forming it in -de or -te, and the part. past in -d or -t by the rules given above. The English synonyms commonly change the vowel in like manner, the German sometimes.

Pres	Imperf	Part. past.	
stelle	stealde (ge-)	steald	<i>leap</i>
recce	reahte(²)	reaht	<i>reck (raught)</i>
sylle	sealde	seald	<i>sell (sold)</i>
secge	{sægdə sæde	sægd } sæd }	<i>say (said)</i>
lecke	lede	led	<i>lay (laid)</i>
bycge	bóhte	bóht	<i>buy (bought)</i>
séce	sóhte	sóht	<i>seek (sought)</i>
bringe(³)	bróhte	bróht	<i>bring (brought)</i>
wyrce	worhte	worht	<i>worh (wrought)</i>

Secge makes 3 sing pres segð or sagað, imper. sege or saga. The impersonal þincan (G. dunken) *to seem*, must not be confounded with þencan (G. denken) *to think*. Þincan makes 3 sing pres þincð (G. dunkt) (me-)thinks; plur. þincad. imperf þúhte (G. dunkte) (me-)thought; part. past (ge-)þúht.

(¹) Also rehte, &c.; réce róhte is another form.

(²) Comp. G. bringe, brachte, ge-bracht.

pencan makes imperf. *þóhte* (G. *dachte*) *thought*; part past (*ge-*)*þóht* (G. *ge-dacht*).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, *a-cwellan* *to hill* (*quell*), from *a-cwelan* *to perish* (*quarl*); *lecgan* (¹) *to lay*, from *licgan* *to lie*; *weccan* *to awaken*, from *wacan* *to wake*. *Willan*(²) *to will*, and *nyllan*(³) *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres.	1. <i>wille</i>	Pres. { <i>wille</i>
	2. <i>wilt</i>	{ <i>willon</i>
	3. <i>wile</i>	Imperf. { <i>wolde</i>
pl.	{ <i>willad</i> { <i>wille</i>	{ <i>woldon</i>
Imperf.	<i>wolde</i> (-st)	INFINITIVE.
pl.	<i>woldon</i>	Pres. <i>willan</i>
		P. pres. <i>willende</i>
Pres.	1. <i>nelle</i>	Pres. <i>nelle(nylle)</i>
	2. <i>nelt</i>	pl. <i>nellon(nylon)</i>
	3. <i>nele(nyle)</i>	Imperf. { <i>nolde</i>
pl.	{ <i>nellad(nyllad)</i> { <i>nelle</i>	{ <i>noldon</i>
Imperf.	{ <i>nolde</i> (-st) { <i>noldon</i>	Imper. { <i>nelle</i> Infin. <i>nellað, &c.</i>
		<i>nyllan.</i>

VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect ends

(¹) Comp. G. *legen*, *wecken*, from *liegen*, *wachen*.

(²) *Bouλ-εσθαι*, L. *vell-e*, *vol-u*; G. *woll-en*, *will*, &c. *woll-te*.

(³) L. *nolle*, for ne *velle*.

with the characteristic, which however if bb becomes f; if g, h: in the second pers. sing. and in the plural h again becomes g.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in the second and third persons sing. present as in German. The part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in English and German.

Examples—*brecan* to break, *healdan* to hold, *drag-an* to draw, *drag*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing. 1. brecce ⁽⁴⁾	healde	drage
2. bricst	hyltst	drægst
3. bricd	hylt(healt)	drægd
Plur. { brecad	{ healdad	{ dragad
{ brecce	{ healde	{ drage
Imperfect.		
Sing. 1. bræc	heóld	dróh
2. bræcce	heólde	dróge
3. bræc	heóld	dróh
Plur. bræcon	heoldon	drógon
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing. brece	healde	drage
Plur. brecon	healdon	dragon
Imperfect.		
Sing. bræce	heólde	dróge
Plur. bræcon	heoldon	drógon.

(4) Comp. G. *breche*, *brichst*, *bricht*, *halte*, *hältst*, *halt*; plur. *brechen*, *halten*, &c.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
IMPERATIVE MODE.			
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecad { brecce	{ healdad { healde	{ dragad { drage
INFINITIVE MODE.			
Pres.	brekan	healdan	dragan
Gen tō	brecanne	—healdanne	—draganne
P. pres	brecende	healdende	dragende
P. past	(ge-)biocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

VIII.—*Class I.*

In the First Class e becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, i or y; i remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in æ, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes é, or in ea: in the part. past i sometimes becomes e; e, o, &c

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past
{ sprece ⁽¹⁾	spricd	spræc	(ge-)sprecen
{ spece	spicd	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		spake	spoken
trede	trit	træd	treden
<i>tread</i>		trod	trodden
ete	yt	æt	eten
<i>eat</i>		ate	eaten
lese	list	læs	lesen
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(1) Comp. G. spreche, sprach, trete, trat, ge-treten, &c. ge-häre. -nur, boren; stehle, stahl, ge-stohlen, &c

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P past.
biddē	bitt	bæd	beden
bid		bade	bidden
sitte	sitt	sæt	seten
sit		sate	sitten
licge	lid	læg	legen
lie		lay	lien, lain
swefe	swefð	swæf	swefen
sleep			
bere	byrd	bær	boren
bear		bare	born
stele	stylð	stæl	stolen
steal		stole	stolen
for-gite	for-git	for-geat	for-giten
forget		forgat	forgotten
gife	gifuð	geaf	gifen
give		gave	given

Niman *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; imperf. nam. name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman (cwuman) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf. cōm (cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.

Wesan *to b.* is thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE

Pres. 1. eom ^(*)	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
plur. synd (syndon)	plur. wæron

(*) Comp. *εip-ε*, *īor-ε*, L. sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sum, er-am, &c.; G. ist, sind, seyd, sey, war, ware, ge-wesen.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	<i>s'</i> , (<i>sig, seō</i>)	Imperf.	<i>wāre</i>
plur.	<i>tjn</i>	plur.	<i>wāron</i>
Imper.	<i>wes</i>	Inf. pres.	<i>wesan</i>
plur.	<i>wesad</i>	Ger.	<i>tō wesanne</i>
	<i>wese</i>	Part. pres.	<i>wesende</i>
		Part. past	(<i>ge-</i>) <i>wesen</i> .

With some of these forms the negative *ne* is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (*ic*) *neom* (*I*) *am not*. 3. *nis* (*nys*) ; imperf. *næs*, &c.; subj. imperf. *nāre*, &c.

Cweðan to say is thus conjugated :

Indic pres *cweðe*, *cwyſt*, *cwyð*; imperf. *cwæd*, *cwæde*, *cwæð* (*quoth*), pl. *cwædon*; subj. pres. *cweðe*, imperf. *cwæde*; part. past (*ge-*)*cweden*: it is otherwise regular.

IX.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class á becomes é; ea, y; eá, ý; ó, é, in the second and third persons: the imperf. has é, or eo (*e* or *eo*).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>læte</i> ⁽¹⁾	<i>læt</i> ,	<i>let</i>	(<i>ge-</i>) <i>læten</i>
<i>let</i>			
<i>slæpe</i>	<i>slæpd</i>	<i>slép</i>	<i>slæpen</i>
<i>sleep</i>		<i>slēpt</i> ⁽²⁾	

(¹) Comp. G. *lässe*, *lässt*, *ließ*, *ge-lassen*, *heisse*, *hiess*, *wachse*, *wuchs*; *laufe*, *lauf*, *ließ*, &c.

(²) *Slept*, *lept*, *swept*, *wep*, are complex forms become simple: *slēp*, *lep*, &c., as also *bet*, are still in P. use.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
háte <i>command</i>	háet	{ héht ⁽³⁾ hét }	háten
hange, hó <i>hang</i>	héhð	heng <i>hung</i>	hangen
wealde <i>govern, wield</i>	wylt	weóld	wealden
fealle <i>fall</i>	fylð (fealdð)	feoll <i>fell</i>	feallen <i>fallen</i>
weaxe <i>wax, grow</i>	wyxð	weox	weaxen <i>waren</i>
beáte <i>bent</i>	beátedð	beót (bet)	beáten <i>bogen</i>
blóte <i>sacrifice</i>	blét	bleót	blóten
hleápe <i>leap</i>	hlýpð	hleóp <i>lep-t</i>	hleápen
swápe <i>sweep</i>	swæpð (swápedð)	swéóp <i>swep-t</i>	swápen
wépe <i>weep</i>	wépð	weóp <i>wep-t</i>	wépen
cnáwe <i>know</i>	cnæwð	cneów <i>knew</i>	cnáwen <i>known</i>
heáwe <i>hew</i>	heáwedð	heów <i>heow</i>	heówen <i>hown</i>
grówe <i>grow</i>	gréwð	greów <i>grew</i>	grówer <i>grown</i>

⁽³⁾ Héht is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, and of which Latin retains several instances; leóle from lácan to play (O. lake), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátau when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)háten.

Hó makes pres. plur. hóð, hó; imper. hóh; infin. hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*

Cneów and the like often become cnéw &c

Gangan, gán⁽¹⁾ *to go*, dóñ *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. gange, gá ⁽²⁾	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæd	déð	býð
pl. { gáð { gá	{ dóð { dó	
Imperf. geóng, eóde	dyde	búde

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing	gá	dó	bú
Pl.	gán	dóñ	búu

IMPERATIVE.

Sing	gang, gá	dó
Pl.	{ gáð { gá	{ dóð { dó

(1) S. and P. ga.z.g, gae. The contracted forms are most used; eóde is the common imperfect, geóng the poetical.

(2) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ue, that, ge-than.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	gangan, gán	dón	búan
Ger.		tó dónne	
P. pres.	gangende	dónde	búende
P. past	gangen, gán	(ge-)dón	(ge-)bún.

X.—Class III.

In the Third Class, a becomes æ, eá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scace	scæcð	scóc (sceóc)	(ge-)scacen
shake		shook	shaken
fare ⁽³⁾	færð	fór	fareñ
<i>fare, go</i>			
hlihhe	hlihð	hlóh	hlogen
<i>laugh</i>			
sleá	slýhð	slóh	slegen
<i>slay</i>		slew	slain
hlade	hlæt	hlöd	bladen
<i>lade</i>			
grafe	græfð	gróf	grafen
<i>grave, dig</i>			
hebbe	hefð	hóf	hafen
<i>heave</i>		hove.	
scyppe	scypð	scóp (sceóp)	sceapen
<i>shape, create</i>			
wacse	wæxd	wócs	wæscen
<i>wash</i>			

(³) G. fahre, fährt, fuhr, ge-fahren. schlage, schlug; hebe, hob, ge-hoben; scheide, schied, ge-schieden, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stód	standen
stan ^d '		stood	
gale	gæld	gól	galeu
enchant			
spane	spænd	spón	spanen
allure			
sceade	scyt	sceód(?)	sceaden
part, shed			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standed.

XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples.—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing 1. binae	drífe	clúfe
2. bintst	drífst	clúfst
3. bint	drífd	clúfd

(?) P. shad.

Plur.	$\begin{cases} \text{bindad} \\ \text{binde} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{drífad} \\ \text{drife} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{clúfad} \\ \text{clúfe} \end{cases}$
Imperfect.			
Sing. 1.	band	dráf	cleáf
	2. bunde	drife	clufe
	3. band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE			
Present.			
Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drífon	clúfon
Imperfect.			
Sing.	bunde	drife	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon
IMPERATIVE MODE.			
Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	$\begin{cases} \text{bindad} \\ \text{binde} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{drífad} \\ \text{drife} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{clúfad} \\ \text{clúfe} \end{cases}$
INFINITIVE MODE.			
Pres	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past (ge-)bunden	(ge-)drifen	(ge-)clofen.	

XII.—*Class I.*

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past
yrne ⁽¹⁾	yrnd	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind	fran	frunen }
{ frigne		frægn	frugnen }
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drincd	diane	drunceen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drunk</i>	<i>drunker</i>
swimme	swimd	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climbd	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hylpd	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(¹) G. *runne*, *rann*, *ge-ronnen*; *sunge*, *sang*, *ge-sungen*; *trinka* *trunk*; *schwelle*, *schwilt*, *schwoll*, *ge-schwollen*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge	byrgð	bearh	borgen
<i>save, defend</i>			
weorpe	wyrpd	wearp	worpen
<i>throw</i>			
steorfæ	styrfð	stærf	storfen
<i>die, starve</i>			
berste	byrst	bærst	borsten
<i>burst</i>			
þersce	þyrsed	þærse	þorscen
<i>thresh</i>			
feohte	fyht	feaht	fohten
<i>fight</i>		<i>sought</i>	<i>foughten</i>
{ bregde		brægd	brogden }
{ brede	brit	bræd	broden }
<i>braid, draw</i>			

Weordan⁽²⁾ to be, to become, is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. sing. 1.	weorde	Subj pres. weorde, &c
2.	wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3.	wyrð	Imper. weord
plur.	{ weordad weorde	plur. { weordad weorde
Imperf. sing. 1.	wearð	Infin. pres. weordan
2.	wurde	Ger. weordanne
3.	wearð	Part. pres. weordende
plur.	wurdon	P.past (ge-)worden

(2) Comp. throughout; G werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, i becomes in the imperfect á, and this in the second person, &c. i: the part. past has likewise i.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne ⁽¹⁾	scínð	scán	(ge-)scinen
<i>shine</i>		<i>shone</i>	
wríte	writ	wrát	written
<i>write</i>		<i>wrote</i>	<i>written</i>
a-ríse	a ríst	a-rás	a-risen
<i>arise</i>		<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>
be-swíce	be-swícð	be-swáç	be-swicen
<i>deceive</i>			
stíge	stíhð	stáh	stigen
<i>ascend</i>			
a-bíde	a-bídeð	a-bád	a-biden
<i>abide</i>		<i>abode</i>	<i>abiden</i>
grípe	grípð	gráp	gripen
<i>gripe</i>			
ríde	rít	rád	riden
<i>ride</i>		<i>rode</i>	<i>ridden</i>
spíwe	spíwð	spáw	spiwen
<i>spew</i>			<i>spewn</i>
wríðe	wríð	wríð	written
<i>writhe, wreath</i>			

(1) G. scheine, schian, guschuenen, steige, stieg; greife, griff, ge-griffen, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

In the Third Class, eó or ú becomes éá in the imperfect; in the second person &c. u: the part. past has o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past
reóce ⁽²⁾	rýcð	reác	(ge-)rocen
<i>reek</i>			
sceóte	scýt	sceát	scoten
<i>shoot</i>		<i>shot</i>	<i>shotten</i>
creópe	crýpð	creáp	cropen
<i>creep</i>			
ceówe	cýwð	ceáw	cowen
<i>chew</i>			
leóge	lýhð	leáh	logen
<i>lye</i>			
fleóge	flýhð	fleáh	flogen
<i>fly, flee</i>		<i>flew</i>	<i>flowen</i>
beóde		beád	boden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
súce	sýcð	seác	socen
<i>suck</i>			
búge	býhð	beáh	bogen
<i>bow, bend</i>			<i>bown</i>
íute	lyt	leat	loten
<i>out, over</i>			

(2) G. reiche, roch, ge-rochen; schiesse, schoss, &c.

Ceósan *to choose*, makes third pers. pres. cýst; imperf. ceás *chose*, second pers. cure, plur. curon; p. past coren⁽¹⁾.

Seóðan *to seethe*, has third pers. sýð; imperf. seáð, sode, &c.; p. past soden *sodden*.⁽²⁾ Thus also others in -san and -ðan.

Fleúge is contracted to fleó, plur. fleóð, fleó, infin. fleúgan, fleón; thus likewise teógan, teón *to draw, tug*: wreón *to cover*, and þeón *to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

Seón *to see*, makes imperf. seáh or séh, sáwe or sége, &c. imper. seóh or sýh; part. present seónde; part. past (ge-)sewen, or segen.

Gc-feón (-feán) *to rejoice*, has imperf. ge-feáh or -féh, ge-fage or fege; part. past ge-fagen, -fægen. Beón *to be*, is defective :

Indic. pres. 1. beó ⁽³⁾	Subj. pres. beó
2. býst	plur. beón
3. býð	Imper. beó
plur. beóð beo	plur. beóð beó.

Infin. beón Ger. tó beónne. Part. pres. beónde.

XV.—Anomalous Verbs.

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for their present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and for their imperfect one formed since after the Simple Order.

(1) G. kiese, kor, ge-koren.

(2) G. niede, sott, ge-sotthen.

(3) G. bin, bist.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan, p. past. ágen: *own, possess*. Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úðe; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant*.

Can⁽²⁾ (*can*); 2 cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúðe (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúð: *know, ken, be able*.

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth*.

Dear, dearst, durron; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare*.

Ge-man⁽³⁾, ge-manst, ge-munon: imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember*.

Mæg⁽⁴⁾, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan · *be able*.

Mót⁽⁵⁾, móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. moste: *may, might, must*.

Sceal⁽⁶⁾ (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe*.

Wát⁽⁷⁾ (*wot*), wást, witon, imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítad; inf. wítan; ger. tó wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know*. Thus also nýtan *to know not*.

⁽²⁾ Comp. L. novi *I know*, G. *kenne*, kann *kannte*, konnta, &c.

⁽³⁾ Comp. L. defective me-nun-i *I remember*.

⁽⁴⁾ G. mag, moge, mogte, &c.

⁽⁵⁾ G. muss, musste, &c.

⁽⁶⁾ G. soll, sollte, &c.

⁽⁷⁾ Comp. olda *I know*, G. weiss, wusste, wissen; L. scio; as distinguished from can (*can have*) γνωσκω. I. novi.

pearf(¹), pearft or purfe, purfon; subj. purfe;
imp. porste; inf. pearfan: *need*.

XVI.—Auxiliaries, &c.

The A. S. has no future tense, the present serving for both: *wille* and *sceal*, like G. *will* and *soll*, imply *will*, *duty*, and the *like*, and are not used like *will* and *shall*, to form a simple future; the present of *beón* has commonly a future power. The perfect and pluperfect are formed as in English, German, &c. by means of the verb *to have*; as, *ic hæbbe* (*ge-*)*lufod* *I have loved.*(²) The participle past being as in the above-named tongues the only true passive form, the passive tenses are formed throughout by the help of the auxiliaries *wesan*, *weordan*, and *beon to be*; as, present *ic eom*, or *weorðe lufod*(³) *I am loved*; imperf. *ic wæs*, or *weard lufod*; perf. *ic eom lufod worden* *I have been loved*; pluperf. *ic wæs lufod worden* *I had been loved*; future, *ic beó lufod* *I shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages; as, *hit rind* *it rains*, *hit ge-limpd* *it happens*. Some have a passive sense; as, *a-lýfd* *it is allowed*, *lawful* (L. *licet*); *ge wyrd* *it is agreed*, *seems good* (L. *convenit*).

(¹) G. *darf*, *durfte*.

(²) The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

(³) Comp. G. *ich habe*, *hatte*, *werde*, *wurde*, *ge-niebt*, *ich bin*, *war gehebt worden*.

CHAPTER VI.

I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. closely resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; I. and G. *un-*): *un-scyldig* (G. *un-schuldig*) *in-nocent*; *un-tigian* *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): *n yllan* (for *newillan*, L. *n-olle* for *ne velle*) *to will not, null*; *n-án* *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-*, *misse-*). *mis truwian* (G. *mis-trauen*) *to mis-trust*; *mis-dæd* (G. *misse-that*) *mis-deed*.

wan-⁽⁴⁾ (*wana wanting*): *wan-hál unhealthy*.

to-⁽⁵⁾ (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): *to-brecan* (L. *dis-rumpere*, G. *zer-brechen*) *to break in pieces*; *to-drífan* (L. *dis-pellere*, G. *zer treiben*) *to scatter, drive away*.

(4) Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. *wan-hoop*) *despair*; *wan-trust* (D. *wan-trouw*) *mis-trust*.

(5) Hence O. *to-broken*, *to-torn* &c. The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *to*.

for-(¹) (L. *per-*; F. *for-*; G. *ver-*): for-beódan (G. *ver-bieten*) *to for-bid*; for-swerian (L. *per-jurare*) *to for-swear*; for-gán *to for-go*; for-bærnan (G. *verbrennen*) *to burn up, consume*; for-gifan (G. *ver geben*) *to give away, for-give*.

wiðer- (wið *against*; G. *wider-*): wiðer-saca (G. *wider-sacher*) *adversary*

and- (ávti; G. *ant-*): and-wlíta (G. *ant litz*) *coun tenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-*; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-bruder*) *brethren*; ge-scý (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes*; ge-mæne (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common*; ge-fera (G. *gefahrt*, L. *com-es*) *companion*; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to wⁱge*; ge-þencan (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember*; ge-strangian *to strengthen*; ge-leánian *to reward*; ge-niderian *to de grade, condemn*; from standan, þencan, strang, leán (*reward*), niðer; or gives a figurative sense; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning; as, seón, ge-seón *to see*; hýran, ge-hýran *to hear, obey*; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit*; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be*) makes neuter verbs active; as, gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit, &c.* (G. *gehen, be gehen*); feran *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren, be fahren*). It is sometimes privative; as, bycgan *to buy*, be-bycgan *to sell*; be-heáfdian *to be-head*: often in-

(¹) Hence O. *for-done, for-spent, &c.* The prefix *for-* must not be confounded with the preposition *for*, which seems not to occur in composition.

tensive; as, *reáfian* *to rob*, *be-reáfian* *to be-reave* (G. *rauben*, *be-rauben*) ; *be-gyrdan* (G. *be-gürten*) *to be-jird*; or otherwise modifies the sense, as, *be-healdan* *to be-hold*, *be-sprecan* (G. *be-sprechen*) *to be speak*.

ed- (*again, re-*) : *ed-niwian* *to re-new*.

sín- (simple *always*, L. *semper*) : *sin-grén* *ever-green*
sam- (L. *semi-*) : *sam-cuce*(²) *half-quick, half-dead*.

æg- or *ge-* gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, *æg-hwylc* (*ge-hwylc*) *each, every*.
æg hwider whithersoever.

II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

-a(³) : *cemp-a* *warrior, champion*; *hunt-a* *hunter*;
bog-a *bow*.

-ere : (E. and G. -er; L. -or) : *reáf-ere* (G. *räub-er*)
robb-er; *sád-ere* (L. *sat-or*) *sow-er*.

-end (from the part. pres.) : *Hæl-end* (G. *Heil-and*)
Saviour, healer; *weald-end* *ruler*.

-e : *hyrd-e* *herd, keeper*; *sig e* *victory*; *riht-wis-e*
righteousness.

-el, -ol, -l (E. -le; G. -el) : *byd-el* (G. *bed-el*) *herald*
bead-le; *gaf-ol* *tribute, gav-el*; *set-l* (G. *sess-el*) *seat,*
sett-le.

-ing : *æðel-ing* *prince, young noble*; *Wóden-ing*
son of Woden; *earm-ing* *poor wretch*.

(²) *Cuo, oucu, cuoen, cwic* (-e) are also found

(³) Answering sometimes to L. -o; as, *gum-a*, L. *hom-o man, groom*;
hence *brýdgum* a G. *brauti-gam, bride-groom*.

-ling (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein, -ling*): enæp-ling (G. *knab-lein*) *little boy*; deór-ling (G. *theuer-ling*) *darling*.

-incle (L. *-uncul-us, -a*): ráp-incle *little rope*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): mægd-en *maid-en*, from mægð *maid* (G. *magd, mad-chen*), cyc-en *chick-en* from cocc *cock*.

-en (E. *-en*): þeód-en *sovereign*, byrd-en *burh-en*

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, þen, þin-en *slave, female slave*; fox, fyx-en (G. *fuchs, fuchs-in*) *fox, vix-en*, sometimes not; as, þeów, þeów-en *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take -e; others change the vowel only; as, mearh, myr-e *horse, mare*; wulf, wylf (G. *wolf, wolf-in*) *wolf, she-wolf*.

-estre (E. and D. *-ster*): sang-estre (D. *zang-ster*) *song-ster*, from sangere *singer*; sæm-estre *seam-ster*, from sæm-ere *seamer, tailor*.⁽¹⁾

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

-dóm (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): wís-dóm *wise-dom*; cyne-dóm⁽²⁾ (G. *könig-thum*) *king-ship*

-hád (E. *-head, -hood*; G. *-heit*): mæden-hád *maid-head*; cild-hád (G. *kind-heit*) *child-hood*.

(1) In *songstr-ess, seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been superadded. *Huck-ster, malt-ster, tap-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hauk er, malt-er, tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

(2) We have confounded *-dom* and *-ric*, but *-dóm* was properly the *office, realm, rice* the territory thus, *cyne-dóm, cyne-rice* (G. *könig-reich*); *bisceop-dóm, bisceop-rice*, and the like.

-scipe (E. -ship ; G. -schaft) : hláford-scipe *lordship* ; freónd-scipe (G. freund-schaft) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. -lock) : wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-ad̄, -oð : hunt-ad̄ *hunting* ; war-oð *sea-shore*.

-uð, -ð (E. th ; G. -end) : geóg-uð (G. jug-end) *youth* ; treów-d̄ *truth*, *truth*.

-leást (-lýst; from adj in -leás) : gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. -ing ; G. -ung) : hálög-ung (G. heilig ung) *hallow-ing* ; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis: E. -ness ; G. -niss) : car-leás-nes *careless-ness* ; ge-líc-nes (G. gleich-niss) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. -e) : hæt-u (G. hitz-e) *heat* ; mænig-eo (G. meng-e) *many, multitude* ; bræd-o (G. breit-e) *breadth*.

-els (E. -le ; G. -el) : ræd-els (G. raths-el) *ridd-le* ; sticc-els (G. stach-el) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed : rec-ed *mansion* ; eow-ed *flock*

-m (E. -om ; G. -en) : bot-m (G. bod-en) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t : þeow-ot, þeow t *slavery* ; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. -th, -d, -t ; G. -t) : ge-byr-d (G. ge-bur-t) *bir-th*, ge-cyn-d *hin-d, nature* ; mih-t (G. mach-t) *migh-t*

-ræden (ræd *counsel*) : híw-ræden *house-hold* ; mæg ræden *relationship*.

III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e : æðel-e *noble* ; fág-e *fated, fey*.

-ig (E. -y, G. -ig) : dreðr-ig (G. trauring), ~~drear-y~~ ; bys-ig *bus-y*.

-líc (E. *-like*, *-ly*, G. *-lich*) : leóf-líc (G. *lieb lich*) *love-ly*; wíf-líc (G. *weib-lich*) *woman-like*, *woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*) : cild-isc (G. *kind-isch*) *child-
ish*; Engl-isc (G. *engl-isch*) *Engl-ish*, *Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*) : lang-sum (G. *lang-sam*, *tedious*, *long-some*; wyn-sum (G. *wonne-sam*) *amiable*, *win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*) : sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*) : fleax-en (G. *flachs-en*) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*

bære (*beran to bear* : G. *-bar*) : lust-bære (G. *lust-bar*) *pleasant*; wæstn-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (*cynn kind, race*) : woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *icht*) : þorn-iht (G. *dorn-icht*) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*) : tō-weard *toward*. *to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*) : án-feald *single, one-fold*; twi-
feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *many-fold*

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*) : syn-leás (G. *sunde-los*) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. *ehr-los*) *void of honour, impious*.

-wís (*wise*) : ge-wís (G. *ge-wiss*) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*) : súð-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme : hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

IV.—*Verbal Terminations.*

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. 1.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, ceár-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsu-mian *to obey*, wiðer-ian *to oppose*; from ceár *care*, ge-hýrsu *obedient*, wiðer *against*.

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-
c-ian *to prepare*, syn-g-ian *to sin*, wít-n-ian *to punish*,
mær-s-ian *to magnify*; from gearu *ready*, yare, syn
sin, wíte *punishment*, mære *great, famous*

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and
-ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to
consider, enquire*; þreagan, þreán *to vex*; sleahan,
sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan
fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole
hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, rác-ean,
þicg-ean, for rác-an *to reach*, þicg-an *to touch, taste,
&c.*

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (after obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), *yet*, be by, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (*a-weg*) *a-way*; on-bæc (*under-, ofer-bæc*) *a-back*, *back*; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-gean (*a-gen*) *a-gain*, *a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,⁽¹⁾ &c.; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e) (²) a-riht *a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dále *partly*; tó-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of-dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tó-gædere (*æt-gædere*), tó-somne (*æt-somne*, G. zu-sammen), *to-gether*.

líc-e (E. -ly; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-þý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? (*for*) *why?*, datives for-þám *because*, tó-þón-þæt *in order that*, síð-þán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrft-um *by turns*, sticce-málum⁽³⁾ *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furð-um (-on) *even, just*, on-sundr-on *in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es⁽⁴⁾ (*νυκτ-ος*, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether, nall-es by no means*, sóð es *of truth*, tó-gean-es *against*, tó-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(1) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heág-e; nearw, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as rera and the like.

(3) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. *stuck*), mál (II. 3) (G. *mahl*) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde, at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -os &c. and -is.

*yore, son-a soon, forthwith, eall-unga altogether, hol-
inga in varn, yrr-inga angrily.*

-an (an oblique case): níw-an *of late, newly, for-an
before, on midd-an, a-midd-an a-mid.* wið-út-an
*without, búf-an⁽⁵⁾ (for be-úf-an) a-bove; a-bút-an (for
on-be-út-an) a-about, &c*

Other adverbial terminations are:—

-der (*motion to—*): hi-der *hi-ther, þi-der thi-ther,
hwí-der whi-ther.*

-on, -an (*motion from—*): heon-on *hence, þan-on
thence, hwan-on whence*

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in—*): her *here, þær (þara) there
hwær (hwar) where; inn-e within, út-e without.*

VI.—Composition (6)

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c. abounds in compound words, of which the last part commonly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives are usually compounded together, and with verbs, without change, as in English, &c.; as, fíc-treów *fig-tree* heáfod-man (G. haupt-mann) *head-man, captain, heáh-sacerd, high-priest, bísceop-ríce bishop-ric, stæf cræft letter-craft, grammar, medo-ærn⁽⁷⁾ mead-hall þeow-boren slave-born, stede-fæst steady-fast, bealo full baleful, snáw-hwít (G. schnee-weiss) snow-white iren-heard (G. eisen-hart) as hard as iron, lif-fæstar*

(5) D boven; "Oranje boven!" (6) See Rask, pp. 113—117

(7) Or-ærn; seslter-nalt-ærn.

to quicken, ful-fremman (G. voll-bringen) *to ful-fil*, and the like.

A noun, however, standing first, is often put in the genitive case, especially in local names; as, dóm-es-dæg *doom's-day*, hilde-byrue *war-corset*; Engla-land *Englund, land of the Angles*; Cant-wara-burh *Canterbury, burgh of the Kenters*; Cinges-tún *King's-town, Kingston*, Beorminga-hám *Birming-ham, home of the Beormings*; Oxena-ford *Ox-ford, ford of oxen*; from dóm, hild, Engle, Cant-ware, cing, Beorming, oxa. One or each part is sometimes shortened, &c.; as, frum-cenned *first-born*, æl-beorht *all-bright*, mild-heort *mild-hearted*; from fruma *beginning*, eall, milde, heorte. Prepositions and adverbs commonly stand before verbs, &c. without change, as in English, German, &c., as, ymb-gang (G. um-gang) *circuit*; þurh-faran (G. durch-fahren) *to go through*; wið-standan (G. wider-stehen) *to with-stand*, ið-cyme *coming to* (L. ad-ventus); fore-rynel *fore-runner*, fore-mihtig (L. præ-potens) *very mighty*; úp-riht (G. auf-recht) *up-right*; úp-stígan⁽¹⁾ (G. auf-steigen) *to go up*, niðer-stígan (G. nieder-steigen) *to go down*; forð-gán (G. fort-gehen) *to go forth*; út-lág *out-law* (L. ex-lex), ofer-cuman *to over-come*; ofer-mód (G. über-muth; pride; under-niman (G. unter-nehmen) *to under-take*, fram-ge-wítan *to depart from*; in-lædan (G. ein-leiten) *to lead in*; geond-geótan *to pour through, suffice*; on-gean-cyrran *to turn back again*; of-sceótan

(1) Stígan (G. steigen) answers to L. scandere; ad-scendere, de-scendere, &c.

(G ab-schiessen) *to shoot off*; æfter-fyligend *successor, one who follows after*; mid-síðian *to travel with*; sundor-spræc *conversation apart*; samod-(sam)-wyrcan *to work together, co-operate*

The preposition be, bi, usually becomes big in composition; as, big-spel (G. bei-spiel) *example, parable*, big-standan (G. bei-stehen) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle be, which sometimes becomes bi; as, be-standan, bi-standan (G. be-stehen) *to stand on, occupy.*⁽²⁾ On often becomes an- or a-; as, on-bídan, an-bídan, a-bídan *to a-bide*. Æt and od in composition often mean *from, away*; as, æt-berstan *to burst away*, od-yrnán *to run away, escape*, like G. ent-bersten, -rinnen.

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German, but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, þurh, úp, niðer, tó, forð, út, in, on, bi (big) are separable; a-, an-, be-, ge-, ed-, un-, or-, nis-, od, and-, wið, sam-, for-, to-, are inseparable; et, of, &c. are rarely separated.

CHAPTER VII.

I.—*Syntax.*

THE A. S. SYNTAX in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

(2) See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wíð Rómana-ríce ge-winn úp-a-hófon, at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.

þa Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beóř wolde, þa wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.

We sceolon mid biternysse sóđre be-hreow-sunge úre móđ ge-clænsian, we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

II.—*Syntax of Nouns.*

Nouns of time answering to the question, “ how long ? ” are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan all the week

þrý dagas, or þrym dagum three days.

Answering to the question “ when ? ” they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

pý feordan dögore *on the fourth day.*

On þisum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tída(¹) *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive; as,

Twēgra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive, as,

Hund mittena hwætes *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig pund a goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged, as,

Twegen marc gold(²) *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive; as,

A'r-wyrdre yldo *of venerable age.*

Fægeres and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative, as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne(³) *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý(⁴) *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(¹) Comp F de nos temps

(²) G. zwei mark gold.

(³) L. stricto telo; ove repertū.

(⁴) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative or dative, with or without the preposition *mid*, as,

Hine mid þý heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trym-mende *strengthening himself with that heavenly viati-cum.*

þý betstan leóðe ge-glenged *adorned with the best lay.*

Heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum ƿeáfe ge-frætwode
she adorned herself with royal attire

Híg sprecad̄ niwum tungum *they shall speak with new tongues.*

III.—*Syntax of Adjectives.*

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it; as,

Feos wana *wanting money.*

Freónda leás *lacking friends.*

Hrægles þearfa *devoid of raiment.*

Earn ætes georn *an eagle eager for food.*

Ac ic heora eom swíðe gifre *but I am very greedy of them.*

Bóca gleáw skilful in books.

Un-wís God-cundan Naman *ignorant of the Divine Name.*

Hí næron his ge-myndige *they were not mindful of him.*

Módes blíðe *blithe of mood.*

Síðes wérig *neary of tranci*

Mægenes strang *strong of might.*

I'sig federa icy of wings.

They sometimes take an ablative ; as,

Wintrum geong young in years.

Blīnd bām eágum blind of both eyes.

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative ; as,

þeáh he him leóf wære though he were dear to them.

Eallum and-feng acceptable to all.

þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt useless to every man.

Derigend-líc býð þe it will be hurtful to thee.

Full full, wyrðe worthy, scyldig guilty, have an ablative, dative, or genitive ; as,

Full Hálgyum Gástē full of the Holy Ghost.

Full deádra bána full of dead bones.

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes the workman is worthy of his meat.

Se býð dóme scyldig he shall be guilty of the judgment.

He is deáðes scyldig he is guilty of death.

Ge-líc like, has a dative or genitive ; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum(1), they are like the children.

Nán man nis his ge-líca no man is like him.

The word which determines a comparative stands before it in the ablative neuter ; as,

þrym mundum hýrra three hands higher.

(1) Thus L. similes pueris; ejus similis.

Micle mā *much more.*

pý weordra so *much the worthier.*

Comparatives require either þonne or þe *than*, with a nominative, or an ablative or genitive without; as,

Ge synd sélran þonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

O'ðer-healf gear læs þe þrittig wíntre *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his māra *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive; as,

Ealra wyrtia māst *greatest of all herbs*

* * * For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject; after ælc þára (þæra) þe *each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with ælc and not with þára; as,

Ælc þára þe tó me cymð (*lit. each of them who cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

Swá ge-býrad ælcum þára þe wind so it befitteh *every one that consendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural; as,

þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfston *then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case; as,

Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour*
 Seó sá ge-tácnad þás and-weardan woruld the
sea betokeneth this present world.

A'xian to ask, takes a double accusative ; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing máreáxian *no one*
wurst ask him anything more.

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object named, and a nominative of the name ; as,

Þone un-ge-met líce eargan þú miht hátan hara
the immoderately timid thou mayest call him.

Rædan to rule, a bregdan to draw (*a weapon*), and to-bregdan to cast off (*sleep*,) govern the ablative as,

Þenden hí þý rice rædan móston while they might
rule the realm

A'n of þám þý sweorde a-bræd *one of them drew*
his sword.

Mid-þý heó þá þý slápe to-bræd *when she then*
had cast off sleep.

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying, consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring profiting, escaping from ; likewise for-swerian to swear, cídan to chide, árian to honour, spare, beorgan to save, defend, déman to judge, oleccan to flatter, *stillan(¹) to still, fylstan to succour, efen-lácan to imitate. ge-nea-lácan to approach, and heorcian to hearken to, govern the dative ; as,

Un-cláenum gástum be-být *he commandeth the un-*
clean spirits.

Ne for-beðde ge him forbid him not.

(¹) The verbs marked thus * sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian *no man can serve two lords.*

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þá se wer hýrde his waldende *then the man obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast *if thou then obeyest the Lord*

þes ne ge-þwáredē heora ge-peahte *this (man) agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiað eówera fædera weorcum *ye consent to your fathers' works*

Hím ne wið-stent nán þing *no thing withstandeth him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwádon and wið-wunn-on *(they) contradicted and opposed all his words.*

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate would please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwian *she began to trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deófles costnung, ac fremode the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit, but profited him.

Hú heó þám feónd-lícum gástum oð-fleón mage *how she may escape from the hostile spirits.*

Síð-þán hi feóndum oð-faren hæfdon *when they had escaped from the enemies.*

Ac ne sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde *but he had forsown the weapons of victory.*

Gif þín bróðer syngad cíd him *if thy brother sin-neth chide him.*

Þú nelt árian þáre stówe *thou wilt not spare the lace.*

Beorh þínum feore *save thy life.*

Démað him be eówre *& judge him by your law.*

He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan *he would flatter them with his harp.*

Yðum stilde *he stilled the waves.*

Hím fylston wel gistas síne *his guests succoured him well.*

Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men *let us therefore imitate this man.*

þám deáðe ge-nea lácende *drawing nigh to death.*

Ypolitus heora wordum heorcnaðe *Hippolytus hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

Gá þe ford⁽¹⁾ *go forth*

He him hám-weard ferde *he journeyed homeward*

Hím þá Scyld ge-wát *then Scyld departed.*

He him on-dræt⁽²⁾ monigne feónd *he dreads many a foe*

Wealdan *to wield, govern*, *on-tón *to receive*, *milt-sian *to pity*, hlystan *to listen to*, helpan *to help*, *ge-lýfau *to believe*, wið-sacan *to deny*, ge-feón *to rejoice at*, *hrínan *to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hie thee home," and the like

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes who in those days ruled the kingdom.

On-fóh þíssum fulle receive this cup.

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos then took they the money.

He miltsað úrum gyltum he hath compassion on our sins.

Ge-miltsa míñ have pity on me.

Hwý hlyste ge him? why listen ye to him?

Hlyste he gódes rædes let him listen to good counsel

He him helpan ne mæg he cannot help him.

Ge-help þú earmra manna help thou poor men.

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum because thou believedst not my words.

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan we must not believe that.

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc Julian denied his Christianity

þry-wa þú wið-sæcst míñ thrice thou shalt deny me.

Secg weorce ge féh the warrior rejoiced in the work.

Cwen weordes ge-feáh the queen was glad of the work.

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes nor might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him

þá æt-hráñ he hyra eágéna *then touched he their eyes.*

þá him wæs manna þearf(!) *since he had need of men.*

þa þing þe þas Caseres synd *the things that are the Caesar's.*

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, *remembering, *forgetting, caring for, ceasing from; together with cepan *to take, keep, &c.,* wénan *to hope for,* *neósian *to visit.* on-byrian *to taste,* éhtian or éhtan *to persecute,* oð-sacan *to deny,* earnian *to earn,* deseīve, gilpan *to boast of,* fægnian *to rejoice at,* *on-drædan *to dread,* likewise bídian (*bídan*) *to bide, wait for,* with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,

We ge-wilniad frídes wið eów *we desire peace with you.*

þas ic wilnige and wiſce *that I desire and wish.*

þæt mæden gyrnde deáðes *the maiden yearned for death.*

Ne be-purfon læces þa þe hálē synd *they need not a leech that are whole.*

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað our liege lord requires strength.

Hwý fandige ge míñ? *why tempt ye me?*

For-þón ic his cost node therefore I tempted him.

We wundriad þas wlítan þære sunnan we wonder at the beauty of the sun.

(1) L. illi hominum opus erat

Eówre fýnd wafiað eówer *your foes shall be amazed at you.*

Brúc þisses beágæs, and þisses hrægles neót
enjoy this ring, and use this dress.

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna *I will remember one of his sins.*

Ne ge ne ge-þencad þára fíf hláfa? *and do ye not remember the five loaves?*

þú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten *thou hast forgotten the weapons.*

Hí þæs ne gýmdon *they cared not for that.*

Feores hí ne róhton *for life they recked not.*

Héddon here-reáfes *they heeded the war-spoil.*

Ge-swíc þínes wópes cease *thy weeping.*

Sceolde æðeling ealdies linnan⁽¹⁾ *the noble must part from life.*

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton *they kept to no bridge.*

He nolde nánes fleámes cepan *he would not take to flight.*

Ne þearf ic ænigre áre wénan *I may not hope for any honour.*

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (*he*) *then departed to visit the lofty mansion.*

On-býrige metes⁽²⁾ *let him taste meat*

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna *Paul persecuted Christian men.*

Hwá oð-sæcd þæs? *who denies that?*

Seó þeód þe his earnað *the people that desereth it,*

⁽¹⁾ Linnan sometimes has a dative.

⁽²⁾ We say also "taste of—."

Hú ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægeres?⁽³⁾ *boastest thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægnian þæs folces worda *he must not rejoice at the people's words.*

Híg on-dredon þára Israhela tó-cymes *they dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leánes an-bídað *the hireling awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise tilian *to till, get,* for-wyrnan *to deny,* þancian *to thank,* stýrian (stýran) *to chastise,* have a dative of the person or near object, and a genitive of the thing or far object; as.

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne *then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.*

þá Metod on-láh Medium and Persum aldor-àomes *when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weordscipes *who denied him not kingly honour.*

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise teón &c. *to accuse,*

have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative or genitive of the far object ; as,

Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-næman *I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian *s/he cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen *charged with secret practices.*

Hwý týhð ús úre hláf-ord swá micles falses ?
why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit ?

Biddan to ask for, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object , as

Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfes *if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative · hit is often left out , as,

Hyngrað hine (¹) *he is hungry.*

Seó swefen þe hine mætte *the dream that he dreamed.*

Híre ge-býrad it becometh her.

Hit licode Herode it pleased Herod.

Him þúhte it seemed to him (lit. him thought).

Ne ge-weard unc wið énne pening ? *did we not agree for a penny ?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs ; as,

Þone weligan lyst an-wealdes *the rich lusteth for power.*

Nænne mon þæs ne tweóð no man doubts of that.

(¹) Comp. G. es hungert ihn ; es ge buhrt ihr , ihm dunkte.

þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað *thou needest no repentance.*

Him þæs ne sceamode *of that they were not ashamed.*

V.—*Syntax of Prepositions.*

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed: thus,

geond	<i>through, throughout</i>	ymb(-e) ⁽¹⁾	{	<i>round,</i>
þurh ⁽²⁾	<i>through</i>	þmb-útan		

wid-æftan *behind*

govern the accusative; as,

Gá geond wegas and hegas *go through the ways and hedges.*

þurh his micle ge-þyld *through his great patience.*

Wid-æftan þá buih *behind the town.*

Ymb þæs cyninges slege *about the slaying of the king.*

Ymb-útan þone weall *around the wall.*

The following govern the dative

be (bi, big) ⁽³⁾	<i>of, about, by</i>	in-tó <i>into</i>
of off, from, of		ær <i>ere, before</i>
fram from, by		feor <i>far from</i>
æt at, to		un-feor ⁽⁵⁾ <i>near</i>
tó to		neah (nean) <i>nigh</i>

⁽²⁾ G. durch.

⁽³⁾ Comp. ἀμφί, L. amb-, G. um.

⁽⁴⁾ Comp. ἡπι, G. bei; ἀπ-ε, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad, G. zu, &c.

⁽⁵⁾ Lit. un-far; G. un-fern.

ge-hende	<i>near, handy</i>	tó-middles	<i>amid</i>
æfter	<i>after</i>	on-middan	<i>amid</i>
búfan	<i>{ above</i>	binnan ⁽²⁾	<i>{ within,</i>
on-úfan	<i>{</i>	wid-	<i>{ innan</i>
be-æftan (bæftan)	<i>{ abaft,</i>	on-	<i>{ inside</i>
be-hindan	<i>{ behind</i>	aet-	<i>{</i>
be-heonan	<i>on this side</i>	tó	<i>{ foran before</i>
bútan (1)	<i>without, outside</i>	tó-weard	<i>toward</i>
be-twynan	<i>between</i>	tó-eácan	<i>besides.</i>
tó-emnes	<i>along</i>		

Be þám heáh-fædere *concerning the patriarch.*

Be mínes fæder leáfe *by my father's leave.*

Far of þínum lande *depart from thy country.*

Of ánre úp-flóran *off an upper floor.*

Æt þám burnan⁽³⁾ *at the brook.*

Fram cild-háde *from childhood.*

Gá tó þínum húse *go to thy house.*

þá híg in-tó þære byrgene eódon *then they went into the tomb.*

Ær sunnan setl-gange *before the setting of the sun.*

He wæs him feor *he was far from him.*

Un-feor þám húse *near the house.*

Neah þám forda *nigh the ford.*

Ge-hende þære ceastré *near the town.*

Æfter þám ge-seohte *after the fight.*

Búfan þære heofenan *above the heaven.*

Bæftan þære mænigeo *behind the multitude.*

Be-heonan þære stráte *on this side the street.*

(1) D. buiten, O. bout, but.

(2) G. binnan, S. ben.

(3) S. burn.

Bútan þáre wíc-stówe *outside the camp.*

Bútan ælcum an-ginne *without any beginning.*

Bútan wífum and cildum *besides women & children.*

Be-twynan þám twám mynstrum⁽⁴⁾ *between the two monasteries.*

Tó-middes þám wæterum *amid the waters.*

On-middan þám treowe *in the midst of the tree.*

Binnan þám ge-telde *within the tent.*

Æt-foran his þrym-setle *before his glory-seat.*

Tó-weard þám háligrdóme⁽⁵⁾ *toward the sanctuary.*

Tó-eácan þám fodre *over and above the fodder.*

Tó sometimes has a genitive, as,

Tó middes dæges *at mid-day:* likewise in several compound prepositions above and below.

And-lang *along* (like G. ent-lang) governs the genitive; as,

And-lang þæs wéstenes *along the desert.*

The following govern the accusative or dative; the former usually, as in Latin, &c., when motion to, the latter when motion from, or rest in, a place, is signified: but this rule is not strictly followed in A. S.

fore ⁽⁶⁾	<i>before</i>	on	on, in, into
be-foran	<i>before</i>	in	in, into
on-bútan	<i>about, around</i>	(on-)ge-mang	<i>a-mong</i>
oð unto, till		be-tweox ⁽⁷⁾	<i>betwixt, among</i>
úppon upon		úton	<i>outside,</i>
innon within		wiðútan	<i>without</i>

(4) Hence munster, G. munster, all from L. monasterium.

(5) Hence O. halidom. "by my halidom!"

(6) Comp. πρό, L. pro, G. (be-)vor, G. an, δι, L. and G. in; über, G. über, D. over, G. unter, gegen, &c.

(7) Like b e-tw y u an from twá, comp. G. zwischen from zwo.

<i>ofer over</i>	<i>tō-geanes</i> { <i>against</i> ,
<i>under under</i>	<i>on-gean</i> { <i>toward</i>
	<i>be-geondan</i> <i>beyond.</i>

Fore Healf-denes hilde-wisan before Healfdene's
war-chiefs.

þá he þá be-foran þone graman cyning ge-læd
wæs when he then was led before the cruel king.

Ic eom a-send be-foran hine *I am sent before him.*

Be-foran eallum folce *before all the people*

On-bútan þæt cealf *around the calf.*

On-bútan þám weofode *about the altar.*

Oð Rin þá eá unto the river Rhine.

Qđ Daniele þám witegan till *Daniel the prophet.*

In þá ealdan wisan in the old wise.

He syll od-flcáh on Asiam *he himself escaped into Asia*

On páṁ heán munte *on the high mount.*

Heó hine in þæt mynster on-feng *she received him into the monastery.*

In ge-limp-licre tide at a fitting time.

lc eów sende swá sceáp ge mang wulfas *I send you as sheep among wolves*

On-ge-mang óðrum mannum among other men.

Be-tweox his magas amo g his kin's-folk.

Be-tweox þære ealdan æ and þære niwan be-
twux the old law and the new.

pá feoll he úppon hine *then fell he upon him.*

U'ppon ánum beáme upon a beam.

Heó be-seáh innon þá byrgene *she looked into the tomb.*

Iunon þære healle *within the hall.*

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

Hí eomon oter þá sā *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm he-com ofer þære Roman-
iscre leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wid-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wid-útan þám díce *without the ditch*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gáð hegoeth *against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gean hine *fighting against him.*

þá com him þær on-gean *then came there to meet him*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake*

For *for*, and mid(¹) *with*, govern the accusative,
ablative, or dative, as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all Christian people.*

For þý mánē *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-sprecenan fæmnan(²) *with the fore-said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wið *against, with, &c.* governs the accusative, dative,
or genitive; as,

Wið þá reádan sā *by the Red Sea.*

Wið þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wið hí læswodon *the asses were grazing with them.*

(¹) Comp. G. fur; μετα, G. mid.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wid þæs holtes⁽¹⁾ *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid sáton *they sat with him.*

Him bi twegen bámas stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all, as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind*

þá ge-nea-læhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard⁽²⁾ *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

VI.—Syntax of Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode:

and⁽³⁾ *and.*

eác *eke, also.*

(1) P. holt, G. holz.

(2) Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

(3) Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, da—da, &c.

ac but

swá, swá-swá so, as

swá—swá so—as

*þá } then
þonne }*

*þá } when, as
þá-þá }*

(for-)hwý why?

míd-þý(-þe) () } when,
mid-þám(-þe) } while*

þenden while

síð-þán since

oððe—

óðer-twega — } oððe } either

óðer-þára — } —or

ge — } ge } as well—as

ægðei-ge, } ge } both—and

náðer-ne—ne neither—not

swá þeáh } yet,

*(þeáh-)hwæðere } never-
theless*

ná-læs—ac not only—but

*(for-)þý(-þe) } for, because,
for-þám(-þe) } therefore.*

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

þæt, þæt-te (⁹) that

þeáh(-þe) though

swylce as if

*þonne } when
hwænne }*

hwær } where

hwar }

þý-læs(-þe) lest

tó-þón-þæt in order that

á-þý—þe so much the—as

oð(-þæt) until

þá-hwíle(-þe)(⁶) (the) while

æi } } ere,

ær-þám(-þe) } } before

hwæðer(-þe)(⁷) } whether

sam—sam } } (—or)

gif (⁸) if

nemne } unless

nymðe }

hú, hú-mæta how.

(⁹) The particle *þe* is added or not at pleasure to several conjunctions.

(⁶) G. dass, D. dat., G. doch, wann, wenn, &c.

(⁷) Hwíl is a noun, (n. 3) *while, time*, G. weile.

(⁸) Answering to ποτεπον—ἢ, L. utrum—au, like these hwæðer is properly a neuter pronoun

(⁹) The conjunction *gif* has no more to do with the verb *gifa* than *gin* has with *given*, or O. an with *unnan*.

Hwæt dó ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *what shall I do
that I may possess eternal life?*

Ic wát þæt hit býð sáwl and líc-homa *I know
that it is soul and body.*

þeáh hwylc of deáðe a-ríse *though one arise from
death.*

þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan *though I
shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe *as if thou hadst created
them.*

þý-læs þú þíunne fót æt stáne æt-sporne *lest
thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde *in order that
he might extend his empire*

A'-þý un-weordia þe hine manige men for-
seón so much the unworthier because many men despise
him.

Od-þæt þu cume tó þám syrmestan *till thou come
to the first.*

Od-þæt se A-lýsend com until the Redeemer came
þá-hwile-þe ge leóht habban while ye have
light.

þá-hwile-þe he on life býð while he is a-live.

Ær-þám-þe se shana tuwa cráwe before the cock
crow thrice.

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddað before ye ask him.

þonne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest

þonne he hám cymð when he cometh home.

Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weordon tell us
when these things shall come to pass.

Ge nyton hwænne seō tíd is *ye know not when the time is.*

Ic axige hwær seō offrung síg *I ask where the offering is.*

Hwar synd þa nigene? *where are the nine?*

Scéawa hwæðer hit síg þínes suna þe ne sig
look whether it be thy son's or be not.

Sam hit sý sumor sam winter *whether it be summer or winter.*

Gif wéu sý *if there be hope.*

Gif we secgað, of heofone—*if we say, of heaven—*

Nemue him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him*

Bú sædest þæt þú ne mihte wítan hú-meta
he his weólde *thou saidst that thou couldst not know how he ruled it.*

Hú Boetius hine singende ge-bæd *how Boëtius singing prayed*

Bútan for *but* has an indicative, for *unless* a subjunctive; as,

Bútan ic wát *but I know.*

Bútan we gán *unless we go.*

Hú ne with an indicative, and hwæðer with a subjunctive, are used to make prepositions interrogative; as,

Hú ne dód mán-fulle swá? *do not the wicked so?*

Hwæðer ge nú sécan gold on treowum *do ye now seek gold on trees?*

Uwyst þu, or segst þú? *sayest thou?* cweðe ge say
yc? &c. serve the same purpose with an indicative; as,

Segst þú mæg se blinda þone blindan lédan?
may the blind lead the blind?

Cweðe ge hæbbe ge sufol? *have ye meat?*

Uton (-an) with an infinitive, expresses a wish or intention, as,

Uton gán *let us go.*

The negative ne *not* stands (like L. non, ne, F. ne) before the verb; as,

Ne for-læt he eów *he will not forsake you.*

Two⁽¹⁾ or more negatives are often used, ne being usually prefixed to each word capable of taking it; as,

Ne wép þú ná *weep not.*

þá næs nán cræft þæt ic ne cūðe *then there was no art that I knew not.*

Se-be nis náder ne geboren ne ge-sceapen
fram nánum óðrum who is neither born nor created by any other.

Bútan *but, only* takes ne before it, as,

We nabbað búton⁽²⁾ fíf hláfas *we have but five loaves.*

VII.—*Syntax of Interjections.*

Wá *wo* takes a dative; as,

Wá þám men! ⁽³⁾ *wo to the man!* where sý (*beō*) *be,* or býð *shall be* is understood.

(1) The doctrine, therefore, that “two negatives make an affirmative,” is foreign to the true spirit of the English as it would be to that of the Greek language.

(2) Comp. F. nous n'avons que.

(3) L. vae homini! G. weh dem manne!

Wá is me(⁴)! *wo is me!*

On the other interjections, of which the following are the chief, nothing need be added:

lá! *O, oh, lo!*

ea-lá! *oh, halloo, alas!*

efne! *behold!*

wá lá-wá (*wei-lá-wei*) *well-a-way!*

hwæt! *lo! indeed!*

Leóf(⁵) is used as an expletive; as,

Gea(⁶), leóf, ic hæbbe *yea marry have I.*

(⁴) *O þas þou istori.*

(⁵) Analogous to our P and familiar use of the word *de-*.

(⁶) G. and D. *ja.*

CHAPTER VIII.

PROSE EXTRACTS.

N B. Some words that have already occurred are not explained in the notes to this and the next chapter.

I.—*S. Matthew*, xi 1—13.

* * * The Gospels⁽¹⁾, and parts of the Old Testament, were rendered into A. S. by one or more ecclesiastics named *Ælfric*, in the 9th or 10th century; the former from the Vulgate, the latter from some other early Latin translation. The sense therefore, differs now and then from that of the original, and of our authorised version.

1. Se Hælend⁽²⁾ fór on reste-dæg⁽³⁾ ofer æceras⁽⁴⁾; sōd-líce his leorning-cnihtas⁽⁵⁾ hýngrede, and híg on-gunnon⁽⁶⁾ pluccian⁽⁷⁾ þa ear and etan.

2. Sód-líce þá þa sundor-hálgan⁽⁸⁾ þæt ge-sáwon, hí

(1) The extracts from the Gospels are from Mr Thorpe's edition, the only one founded on a collation of the best MSS

(2) Hælend (II 2.) *Sætau*, *healer* (G. *Heiland*), from *hælan* to *heal*: the Name Jesus is thus rendered throughout the A. S. Gospels

(3) *Day of rest, sabbath* rest II 3; G. *rast*.

(4) *Æcer* (II 2.) (*corn*) *field*, ἀγρός, L. *ager*, G. *acker*. hence *acre*.

(5) *Disciples* cniht (II 2.) *youth, servant*, hence *knight* G. *knecht* *servant*, comp. L. *puer*

(6) On-ginnan (III. I.) to *be-gin*. (7) I. l. to *pluck*; G. *pfücken*.

(8) Sundor-hálga (I. 2.) *Pharisee*, lit. *separate saint*.

cwædon tō him: Nū þíne leorning-cniftas dōð þæt him a-lýfed⁽¹⁾ nis i este-dagum tō dóinne.

3. And he cwæd tō him: Ne rædde⁽²⁾ ge hwæt Dauid dyde þá hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hláfas⁽³⁾ þe næron him a-lýfede tō etanne, búton þám sacerdum⁽⁴⁾ ánum?

5. Odde ne rædde ge on þære á, þæt þa sacerdas on reste-dagum on þám temple⁽⁵⁾ ge-wemmað⁽⁶⁾ þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahtre⁽⁷⁾?

6. Ic secge sóð-líce eów þæt þes⁽⁸⁾ is mærra⁽⁹⁾ þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sóð-líce wistou hwæt is: Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-særdnesse⁽¹⁰⁾, ne ge-niðrode ge næfie un-scylidige

8. Sóð-líce mannes sunu is eác reste-dæges hláf-ord⁽¹¹⁾.

9. Þá se Hælend þanon fór, he com in-tó heora gesomnunge⁽¹²⁾:

10. Þá wæs þær án man se hæfde for-scruncene⁽¹³⁾

(1) A-lýfan (I. 2.) *to allow, G. er-lauben* (2) Rædan (I. 2.) *to read.*

(3) Louies of offering, show-bread, offring II. 3 bluf II. 2

(4) Sacerd (II. 2.) *priest L. sacerdos.* (5) Templ (III. 1.) *temple.*

(6) Ge-wemman (I. 2.) *to pollute, profane.*

•

(7) Leahter (II. 2.) *crime, sin*

(8) *This man.*

(9) Mære (I.) *great, famous*

(10) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) *sacrifice, on-seegan to offer.*

(11) II. 2 *lord, said to be from hláf bread, loaf, and ord beginning, margin, that is, giver of bread*

(12) *Assembly, synagogue, G. ver-sammlung.*

(13) *For-scruncan (III. 1.) to shrink up, wither away: mark the intensive force of for-.*

hand. And híg acsodon hine, þus cweðende : Is hit a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum ? þæt híg wrégdou() hine.

11. He sæde him sóð-líce : Hwylc man is of eów, þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fylð reste-dagum on pyt⁽²⁾, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefð hit úp ?

12. Witod-líce⁽³⁾ micle má man is sceápe betera⁽⁴⁾ ; witod-líce hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dóinne.

13. Þá cwæð he tó þám men : A-þena⁽⁵⁾ þíne hand. And he hí a-þenede ; and heó wæs hál ge-woðen swá seó óðer.

II.—S. *Mark*, vi. 32.

32. And on scip⁽⁶⁾ stígende, híg fóron on-sundron on wéstē⁽⁷⁾ stówe⁽⁸⁾.

33. And ge-sáwon híg farende, and híg ge-cneowon manega, and gangende of þám burgum⁽⁹⁾, þider urnon and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh mic-ele mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe híg

(1) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-utroy.*

(2) II 2. *pit, hole*, D. *put*. L *put-eus*

(3) *Verily, truly, for, but, therefore*, a common expletive . from *witian* (I. 1) *to deculu.* (4) Vulgate . “ *Quantiò magis melior* ”

(5) A-þenan (I. 1) *to stretch out*

(6) Comp. *σκαφη*, G. *schiff*, D. *schip*, hence also *skiff*

(7) Wéstē (I.) *waste, desert*, G. *wüst*, D. *woest*.

(8) Hence *stow* in local names, and *to stow, be-stow*.

(9) Burh (p. 19–20), G. *burg* (*πύργος*) a (*fortified*) *town, bulge*.

wéron swa-swá scép⁽¹⁾ þe nánne hyrde nabbað; and he on-gan híg fela láran⁽²⁾.

35. And þú hit micel ylding⁽³⁾ wæs, his leorning-cnihtas him tó comon and cwædon:

36. Þeós stów is wéstē, and tíma is forð-a-gán⁽⁴⁾; for-læt þás mænigeo, þæt híg faron on ge-hende túnas⁽⁵⁾, and him inete bycgon þæt híg eton⁽⁶⁾.

37. Þá cwæd he: Sylle⁽⁷⁾ ge him etan. Þá cwædon híg: Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum⁽⁸⁾ hláfas byegan, and we him etan syllad.

38. Þá cwaed he. Hú fela hláfa⁽⁹⁾ habbe ge? gád and lóciad⁽¹⁰⁾. And þú híg wiston híg cwædon: Fif hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád⁽¹¹⁾ se Hælend þæt þæt folc sáte ofer þæt gréne híg⁽¹²⁾.

40. And híg þá sáton, hundredum⁽¹³⁾ and fiftigum.

41. And fif hlásum and twám fixum on fangenumu⁽¹⁴⁾, he on heofon locode, and híg bletsode, and þa hláfas bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt híg tó-foran him a-setton; and twegen fixas him eallum dælte⁽¹⁵⁾.

(1) Two accusatives as with L. doceo.

(2) Lateness, delay, from eald.

(3) For sceáp. see p. 5.

(4) Gone forth, "far passed."

(5) Tún (II. 2.) village, town. originally enclosure, farm: comp. G. caun hedge, D. tuin garden.

(6) Comp. ēðer, L. edere.

(7) Syllan (I. 3.) to give, sell.

(8) Penig ('pening) (II. 2.) G. pienig.

(9) Gen. see p. 32

(10) Lóciān (I. 1.) to look.

(11) Be-beódan (III. 3.) to command

(12) II. 1 hay, G. heu Vulg. "super vīnde fenum."

(13) By hundreds, &c

(14) Abl. or dat. absolute, p. 75.

(15) Dælan (I. 2.) to deal, divide, distribute, G. theilen, D. deelen.

42. And híg æton þá ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.

43. And híg namon þára hláfa and fixa láfa⁽¹⁾, twelf wílian⁽²⁾ fulle.

44. Sóð-líce fíf þúsend manna þára etendra wárcn.

45. þá sona he nýdæ⁽³⁾ his leorning-cnihtas on scip stígan, þæt híg him be-foian fóron ofer þone múðan⁽⁴⁾ tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt fole for-lete⁽⁵⁾.

46. And þá he híg for-let; he ferde⁽⁶⁾ on þone munt⁽⁷⁾, and hine ána þar⁽⁸⁾ ge-bæd⁽⁹⁾.

47. And þá æfen⁽¹⁰⁾ wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sæ, and he ána wæs on lande.

48. And he ge-seáh híg on réwette⁽¹¹⁾ swincende⁽¹²⁾; him wæs wiðer-weard⁽¹³⁾ wind⁽¹⁴⁾: and on niht, ymbe þá feorðan wæccan⁽¹⁵⁾, he com tó him ofer þá sæ gangende, and wolde híg for-búgan⁽¹⁶⁾.

49. Þa híg hine ge-sáwon ofer þá sæ gangende, híg wéndon þæt hit un-fæle⁽¹⁷⁾ gást⁽¹⁸⁾ wære, and híg clypedon,

⁽¹⁾ Láf(II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*, léfan (I. 2.) *to leave*, λειπεῖν.

⁽²⁾ Wilia (I. 2.) *bosket*. ⁽³⁾ Nýdan (I. 2.) *to compl.*, from neðd

⁽⁴⁾ Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*, here *lake*, Vulg. "fretum."

⁽⁵⁾ For-lætan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laten), *send away*. ⁽⁶⁾ Feran (I. 2.) *to go*.

⁽⁷⁾ II. 2. *mount* we have "a mountain."

⁽⁸⁾ Þar=þær, þara. ⁽⁹⁾ Ge-biddan (II. 1.) *reflect*,) *to pray*.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

⁽¹¹⁾ Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*, D. roeijen.

⁽¹²⁾ Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*, O. svink.

⁽¹³⁾ Adverse, *way-word*, G. wider-wartig.

⁽¹⁴⁾ II. 2. G. & D. *wind*; L. *vent-us*

⁽¹⁵⁾ Wæcce (I. 3.) *watch*. ⁽¹⁶⁾ III. 3 *awed, pass by*.

⁽¹⁷⁾ Unclean, *síle pure, faithful*. fél-s-ian *to purify*.

⁽¹⁸⁾ Comp. G. *geist*, D. *geest*, S. *ghaist*.

50. Híg ealle hine ge-sáwon, and wurdon ge-dréfede⁽¹⁾ And sona he spræc tó hiin, and cwæð . Ge-lýfað ; ic hit eom⁽²⁾ ; nelle ge⁽³⁾ eów on-drædan.

51. And he on scip tó him eóde ; and se wind ge-swác⁽⁴⁾ ; and híg þæs he má⁽⁵⁾ be-tweox him wundredon.

52. Ne on-geaton⁽⁶⁾ híg be þám hláfum ; sóð líce heora heorte wæs a-blend⁽⁷⁾.

53. And þá híg ofer seglodon, híg comon tó Genesaret and þar wícedon⁽⁸⁾

54. And þá híg of scipe eódon, sona híg hine ge-cneówon ,

55. And eal þæt ríce be-farende⁽⁹⁾, híg on sæccingum⁽¹⁰⁾ bæron þa un-truinan⁽¹¹⁾, þar híg hine ge-hýdon.

56. And swá-hwar-swá he on wíc⁽¹²⁾ oððe on túnas eóde, ou stráton⁽¹³⁾ híg þa un-truman ledon, and hine bædon þæt híg huu⁽¹⁴⁾ his reáfes fnæd⁽¹⁵⁾ æt-hrinon⁽¹⁶⁾. And swá fela swá hine æt-hrinon, híg wurdon hale.

(1) Drefan (I. 2.) *to trouble, offend.*

(2) Comp G ich bin es

(3) L. nolite

(4) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(5) *So much the more*, G des to mehr.

(6) On-gitan (II. 1.) *to understand*

(7) A-blendan (I. 2.) *to blind*, blind blind.

(8) Wíclian (I. 1.) *to dwell* see wíc below.

(9) Be-faran=be-feran, p 55 (10) Sæccing (II. 3.) *sacking, bed.*

(11) *Diseased, infirm*; trum firm.

•

(12) Wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling, village*, L. vic-us: hence wich and wick in local names; D. wijk. (13) Strát (II. 3.) *street*, G. strasse, D. straat.

(14) *At least, at all events.*

(15) *Hem.*

(16) *Æt-hrinan (III. 3.) to touch.*

III.—S. *Luke*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel⁽¹⁾ tó þám folce cweðan. Sum man plantode⁽²⁾ him wín-gaard⁽³⁾, and hine gesette⁽⁴⁾ mid tilum(), and he wæs him feor manegum tínum⁽⁵⁾.

10. Þá on tíde he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt híg him sealdon of þæs wín-geardes wæstme; þá swungon⁽⁷⁾ híg þone and ídelne⁽⁸⁾ hine for-leton.

11. Þá sende he oðerne þeów; þá beóton híg þone, and mid teónum⁽⁹⁾ ge-wácende⁽¹⁰⁾ hine for-leton ídelne.

12. Þá sende he þryddan; þá wurpon híg út þone ge-wundodne⁽¹¹⁾.

13. Þá cwæd þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord: Hwæt dō ic? ic a-sende míinne leófan sunu; wénunga⁽¹²⁾ hine híg for-wandiað⁽¹³⁾ þoune híg hine ge seóð

(¹) *Parable* see p. 73 Spel (II. 1) *story, tale, hence spell*

(²) *Plantian* (I. 1.) *to plant*

(³) *Vine-yard*, D. *wijn-gaard* gaard or eard (II. 2) *yard, (garden), inclosure, dwelling, country*.

(⁴) Ge-settan (I. 2) *to furnish, people* perhaps a mis-translation of Vulg “locavit;” we read “*let it forth.*”

(⁵) *Tila* (I. 2) *tiller, husbandman*

(⁶) *Tid* (II. 3) *time, tide, season*; G. *zeit*, D. *tijd*. *For a long time, many seasons*, Vulg “multis temporibus”

(⁷) *Swigan* (III 1) *to beat, swinge.*

(⁸) *I'del* (I) *empty, idle, vain*, G. *etel*, D. *ijdel*.

(⁹) *Teóna* (I. 2) *injury, wrong*

(¹⁰) *Ge-wácen* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure* wác (G. *weich*) *weak*.

(¹¹) *Wundian* (I. 1.) *to wound* wund (II. 2.) *wound*

(¹²) Perhaps wénan to ween, hope, expect; G. *wahnen* to *fancy, &c.*

(¹³) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence.*

14. þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon : Her is se yrfe-weard⁽¹⁾; cumað, uto[n] hine of-sleán⁽²⁾, þæt seó æht⁽³⁾ úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon⁽⁴⁾ of-slegene. Hwæt díð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spilð þa tilian, and syld þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá hig þis ge-hýrdon. Þæt ne ge-weorðe

17. þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð : Hwæt is þær a-writen is. þone stán⁽⁵⁾ þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þáre hyrnan⁽⁶⁾ heáfod⁽⁷⁾?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt⁽⁸⁾; ofer þone þe he fyld, he to-cwyst⁽⁹⁾.

19. þá sóhton þára sacerda ealdras⁽¹⁰⁾ and þa bóc-eras⁽¹¹⁾ hyra handa on þáre tíde on hine wurpan⁽¹²⁾; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc : sóð-líce híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tú him cwæð.

⁽¹⁾ *Heir*, *yrfe* (I. 3.) *inheirance* (G. erb-schaft) • *weard* (II. 2.) *keeper, ward-en, &c.*

⁽²⁾ *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, b at, slay, of sleán to kill outright.* *of-* in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

⁽³⁾ *A'ht* (II. 3.) *possession*, from ágan

⁽⁴⁾ *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject.*

⁽⁵⁾ Comp. G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

⁽⁶⁾ *Hyrue* (I. 3.) *corner*

⁽⁷⁾ *Heúfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

⁽⁸⁾ *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter* Vulg. “conquassabitur.”

⁽⁹⁾ *To-cwysan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-squeeze*, comp. *bar, s-par*, *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble, &c. &c.*

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Chief(s of the) priests.*

⁽¹¹⁾ *Bocere* (II. 2.) *book-man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*

⁽¹²⁾ *Or weorpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum(-) þa þe híg riht-wíse leton⁽²⁾, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon⁽³⁾, and þæt híg hine ge sealdon þám ealdron⁽⁴⁾ tó dóme⁽⁵⁾, and tó þæs déman⁽⁶⁾ an-wealde⁽⁷⁾ tó for-démanne⁽⁸⁾.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwádon: Láreow, we witon þæt þú rihte spricst and lárst, and for nánum men ne wandast⁽⁹⁾, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse láerst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere⁽¹⁰⁾ gafol⁽¹¹⁾ sylle, þe⁽¹²⁾ ná?

23. þá cwað he tó him þá he heora fácen⁽¹³⁾ onget⁽¹⁴⁾: Hwý fandige⁽¹⁵⁾ ge mín?

24. Y'wað⁽¹⁶⁾ me ánne pening. Hwæs an-líenesse⁽¹⁷⁾

(¹) Searu (III. I.) *ambush, stratagem*

(²) *Il ho might feign themselves: righteous men*

(³) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) *to accuse*, G. *be-schuld'gen*. Scyld (II. 3.) (G. *schuld*) *debt, guilt*

(⁴) *Deliver him to the chief priests* Vulg. "traderent illum principatu."

(⁵) Dóm (II. 2) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(⁶) Déma (I. 2) *Judge, doomer, deemer*, hence *deemster* (*démestre*) properly feminine; see p. 66.

(⁷) An-weald (II. 2) *power*, G. *ge-walt*, fem. another exception to the general rule

(⁸) Déman (I. 2) *to judge, for-deman to condemn* + comp. *κρίνειν, καρακρίνειν*, G. *urtheilen, ver-urtheilen*.

(⁹) The *for* in *for-wandian*, is the preposition, not the prefix, the latter inseparable. see p. 76

(¹⁰) Casere (II. 2) *Cæsar, Emperor*, G. *kaiser*.

(¹¹) *Tribute, gavel*, F. *gabelle*

(¹²) *Or*, seldom used independently, but often affixed to other conjunctions. see p. 93. (¹³) III. I. *decent, fraud*.

(¹⁴) *For on-geat*, see p. 5.

(¹⁵) *Fandian* (I. 1.) *to tempt*.

(¹⁶) Y'wan (éowian) (I. 1.) *to show*.

(¹⁷) An-líenes (II. 3.) *likeness, image*.

hæſd̄ he, and ofer-ge-writ⁽¹⁾? þá cwædon híg: þæs Caseres.

25. þá cwæd̄ he tó him: A-gifað⁽²⁾ þám Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

IV.—*S. John vii. 14—28.*

14. þá hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges⁽³⁾, þá eóde se Hælend in-tó þám temple, and kérde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Húmeta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leoinode⁽⁴⁾?

16. Se Hælend him and-swarode⁽⁵⁾ and cwæd̄: Mín lár nis ná míni, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá⁽⁶⁾ wile his willan dón, he ge-cnæwð be þære lare hwæder heó sig of Gode, hwæder-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spieð sécd̄ his ágen wuldor⁽⁷⁾; se-þe sécd̄ þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst⁽⁸⁾, and nis nán un-riht-wísnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów á, and eower nán ne healt þá á? Hwý séce ge me tó of-sleánne?

(1) III. I. *super-scriptio*

•

(2) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back.*

(3) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*

(4) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn, G. lernen.*

(5) And-swarian (I. 1.) *to answer, governing the dative.*

(6) If any one, comp. L. si quis. (7) Wuldor (-er,) (II. 2.) *glory.*

(8) Sooth-fust, truthful, just; fæst forms the second part of several compound adjectives.

20. Þá and-swarode seo mæmo and cwæd: Deofol þe sticad on⁽¹⁾; hwa sécd þe tó of-sleánnē?

21. Þá and-swarode se Hálend, and cwæd to him: Án weorc ic wohlte, and ealle ge wundriad.

22. Foi-þý Moises eów sealde ymb-snideunesse⁽²⁾; (næs⁽³⁾ ná foi-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon⁽⁴⁾);

23. And on reste-dæge ge ymb-snidað man þæt Moises æ ne sý to-worpen⁽⁵⁾, and ge belgað⁽⁶⁾ wið me for þám-þe ic ge-hálde áenne man on rest.-dæg.

24. Ne déme ge be an-sýne⁽⁷⁾, ac démað rihtne dóm.

25. Sume cwædon, þa þe wáeron of Ierusalem: Hú aís þes se þe híg sécad tó of-sleánnē?

26. And nú he spicd open-líce⁽⁸⁾, and híg ne cwedað nán þing tó him. Cweðe we⁽⁹⁾ hwæder þa ealdras on-giton þæt þes is Crist?

27. Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymð, þonne nát nán man hwanon he býð.

28. Se Hálend clypode and lærde on þám temple, and cwæd: Me ge cunnon⁽¹⁰⁾, and ge witon hwanon ic

⁽¹⁾ On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

⁽²⁾ Ymb-snidenne (II. 3.) *circum-cision*; ymb sniðan (III. 2.) *to circum-cise*, part. p. -sniden.

⁽³⁾ Næs (nas) *not*; usually joined with ná.

⁽⁴⁾ For fæderum; see p. 12

⁽⁵⁾ To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy*, L. dis-jucere, G. zer-werfen. ⁽⁶⁾ Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

⁽⁷⁾ An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

⁽⁸⁾ Open (II.) *open*, G. offen, D. open. ⁽⁹⁾ See pp. 95—6.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Observe the distinction between cunnon and wítan (p. 61, note 7) *as ye know, and ye wot whence I am.*

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sóð þe me
ende, þone ge ne cunnon.

V.—*Genesis, ch. xlv.*⁽¹⁾

1. Þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan⁽²⁾, ac he drát
ealle þa Egíptiscan út, þæt nán freinde⁽³⁾ man be-twyz
him nære ;

2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre⁽⁴⁾ stefne, and
þa Egíptiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hited⁽⁵⁾ ;

3. And he cwæd tó his ge-bróðrum : Ic eom Iosep ;
lyfað úre fader nú git ? Þá ne mihton his ge-bróðru
him for ege⁽⁶⁾ ge and-wyrdan⁽⁷⁾ .

4. Þá grétté⁽⁸⁾ he híg ár-wurð-líce⁽⁹⁾, and cwæd :
Ic eom Iosep eower bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egípta-
land⁽¹⁰⁾ .

5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-
þince⁽¹¹⁾ þæt ge me sealdon on þis rice ; sóð-líce for
eówre þearfe me sende God on Egípta-land.

(¹) This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites' *Heptateuchus*.

(²) *To hide* (I. 2), *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

(³) *Fremed*, *fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign*, G. *fremd*.

(⁴) *Hlúd* (I.) *loud*, G. *laut*, D. *luid*. (⁵) II. 1. *hou.eshold*.

(⁶) II. 1. *aue, fear*.

(⁷) *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer*, *and-wyrd* (II. 3.) *answer*, G. *ant-wort-en*. Ge- is used before no other prefixes but and- and ed-, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2 (⁸) *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*.

(⁹) *A'r-wurð-líce* (II.) *honorable*, G. *ehr-wurd-ig*.

(¹⁰) *Land of the Egyptians*: comp. Engla land, &c. p. 72.

(¹¹) (Hit) *of-þincð* *it repented* L. *pénitet* see p. 86-7.

6. Nu twá gear wæs⁽¹⁾ hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon⁽²⁾ fífe on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian⁽³⁾ ne riþan⁽⁴⁾.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-heald-cne, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban⁽⁵⁾.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres þances⁽⁶⁾ ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willa⁽⁷⁾ hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hiredes hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdie ofer Egípta-land.

9. Faiað hræd-lice⁽⁸⁾ to inínuin fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orede eallum Egíptum; beódað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige⁽⁹⁾ on Gessen-lande⁽¹⁰⁾, and heó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna beaín, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hrýðer-heorda⁽¹¹⁾ and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan⁽¹²⁾: dód þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon⁽¹³⁾.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýradhwæt ic tó eów sprece.

(¹) Has been see p. 62, note 2.

(²) Shall be, are to come.

(³) To eat, plough, L arare

(⁴) I 2 to reup

(⁵) See p. 73.

(⁶) Of your own accord see p. 70 Vulg. has "vestro consilio."

(⁷) Through whose will see p. 31

(⁸) Quickly, =hraðe. see p. 25

(⁹) Wunian to dwell; G. wohnen.

(¹⁰) Land of Goshen.

(¹¹) Hrýðer (III. 1) ox, other-beast, G. rund, D. rund mark this dropped and the vowel lengthened. see p. 2 Heord (II. 3) herd; G. herde.

(¹²) Behind, to come.

(¹³) For-weorðan (III. 1.) to perish; observe the force of the prefix

12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal míni wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egípra-lande : éfstað and læiað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte⁽¹⁾ heora aelcne, and cyste⁽²⁾ híg

15. And weóp æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecan wið hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal⁽³⁾, and wíd-mársode⁽⁴⁾
þæt Iosepes bróðiu comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao
wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum
and þus cwæde : Sýmad⁽⁵⁾ eóvre assan, and farað tó
Chanaan-lande.

18. And ƿimad⁽⁶⁾ þær eóweine fæder, and eówre
mægða⁽⁶⁾, and cumad⁽⁷⁾ tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle
Egipta góð

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas⁽⁷⁾ tó hyra
cilda fare⁽⁸⁾ and tó hyra ge-mæccena⁽⁹⁾, and beód him
eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hidr swá híg
hraðost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing⁽¹⁰⁾ of eówrum
yddisce⁽¹¹⁾, for-þím ealle Egipta spéda⁽¹²⁾ beóð eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I 2) *to embiace, clip*

(2) Cyssan (I 2) *to kiss*, G. küssen (3) Everywhere, G. über-all.

(4) Wíd-mársowan *to noise, spread abroad*, from wíd and máre

(5) Sýman (I 2) *to load.* (6) Mægð (II 3) *family, household, tribe*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2) *wagon, aam*, G. *wagen*

(8) Far (II 3) *giving, journey*, hence *fare*

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I 2, 3) *husband, wife, companion, mate*, O. *make*.

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *food*, from etan; hence P. *eddish, ashes, &c. feed for cattle after-grass, stubble.*

(12) Spéd *wealth.*

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fór-mete⁽¹⁾,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd⁽²⁾; and he sealde Beniamine fíf scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa⁽³⁾.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wáron gesýmed mid feo, and mid híægle⁽⁴⁾, and mid Egipta welon⁽⁵⁾, and tyne þe báron hwáte and hláf

24. Witod-líce he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwæd tú him : Ne for-láte ge nán þing⁽⁶⁾ be wege, ac beóð swíðe ge-sómie⁽⁷⁾

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwædon tó him : Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þúhte him swylce he of hefigum slápe a-wacode,

27. And þéah he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton⁽⁸⁾ him hyra færeld⁽⁹⁾ be ende-býrdnesse⁽¹⁰⁾ and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wáron. his gást wearð ge-ed-cwicod⁽¹¹⁾,

(1) "Provision for the way," fór (II. 3.) *journey*, mete (II. 2.) *meat*

(2) Vulg. "stolas;" "changes of rument" scrúd (II. 1.) *garment, shroud*.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2) "piece of silver."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2) *raiment, garment, hence night-rail*.

(5) Wela (I. 2) *veal, wealth: pl. riches, prosperity*

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5 Vulg. hss here "Ne irascamini 'we see that ye fall not aut."

(7) Mild, gentle

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) *to relate*.

(9) Going, journey, or perhaps, how they had fared.

(10) In order, succession Vulg. "Illi econtra referebant omnem ordinem rei."

(11) Ge-ed-cwician to make alive again, quicken, cwic, cuo, &c. quick, living.

28. And he cwæd Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep
mín sunu gyt leofað; ic fare and ge-seó hine aér-hámu-
þe ic swelte⁽¹⁾.

VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii.⁽²⁾

- 1 Ne under-fóh⁽³⁾ leáse⁽⁴⁾ ge witnesse⁽⁵⁾.
- 2 Ne fylig⁽⁶⁾ þú þám folce þe yfel wille don, ne
be-foran manegon sóðs ne wanda⁽⁷⁾
3. Ne multsa⁽⁸⁾ þú þeaſan⁽⁹⁾ on dóme.
- 4 Gif þú ge-míte þínes feóndes oxan oddē assan,
læd hine tó him
- 5 Gif þú ge-seó his assan liegan under byrdene⁽¹⁰⁾,
ne gá þú þanon, ac hefe hine úp mid him.
- 6 Ne þú ne wanda on þeaſan dóme.
7. Fleóh⁽¹¹⁾ leásunga⁽¹²⁾; un-scyldigne and iikt-wisne
ne of-sléh þú.

(¹) Sweltan (III. l.) *to die*

(²) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting

(³) Under-fangan, -fon (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*

(⁴) Leás (l.) *false, lying* (⁵) *Witness, testimony* (⁶) See p. 42

(⁷) Wandian to *fear*, &c. shrink not, decline not from the truth through
fear (⁸) Miltsan to *pity*, from milde (⁹) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(¹⁰) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen, G. burde.* from beran.

(¹¹) Fleógan, fieón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly, G. fliehen, fliegen.*

(¹²) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique
cases singular in -a. Leásung *leaving, lying*, from leás

8. Ne nim þú lác(¹) þa a-tlendað gleáwne(²), and a-wendað(³) riht-wísra word.

9. Ne beó þú ael-peódigum (⁴) gram (⁵), for-þám ge wáeron ael-peódie on Egípta-lande.

10. Sáw (⁶) six ger(⁷) þín land, and gadera(⁸) his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám seofodan, þæt þearfan eton þær-of, and wild-deór(⁹): dó swá on þínum wíneайде, and on þínum ele-beámon(¹⁰)

12. Wyre six dagas, and ge-swíc (¹¹) on þám seofodan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt (¹²), and se útan-cumena (¹³)

13. Healdadæt calle þa þing þe ic eów sæde, and ne sweiie ge þurh útan-cumena goda naman.

14. Þrywa on gere ge-wurdiað (¹⁴) míinne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbol (¹⁵); sefon dagas ge etað

(¹) *Gifts*, here neuter II. I., but see p. 9

(²) *Gleaw* (I.) *shifful*, *clever*, G. *klug*

(³) A-wendan (I. 2) *to turn away, sub-vert, per-vert*, G. *ab-wenden*. The prefix *a-* sometimes has the force of *of-*

(⁴) *Ael-peódig* (II.) *foreign, strange, wi-* is here = *āll-oc*, L. *al-ius*, alienus, and not to be confounded with *ael* for *eal*, in *wel-mihtig*, *wel-beorht* and the like.

(⁵) *Angry, cruel. Vulg.* “molestus.”

(⁶) *Sáwan* (II. 2) *to qw*, G. *sahen*

(⁷) = *gear*, see p. 5.

(⁸) *Gaderian* *to gather.*

(⁹) *Wild beasts.*

(¹⁰) *Olive-trees*, ele *oil*, beáum *beam*, *tres*; G. *baum*, D. *boom*, whence *bom*

(¹¹) *Ge swican* (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(¹²) *Ge-hyrtan* (I. 2) *to encourage, hearten, strengthen*, from *heorte*.

(¹³) *Stranger, one come from without*, *it-on*, see p. 71

(¹⁴) *Ge-weorðian* (*wurðian*) *to honour, exaltate*, G. *wurdigen*.

(¹⁵) *Feast of unleavened bread.*

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beád, on þæs monðes tíð níwra⁽¹⁾ wæstma, þá þú út-føre of Egipita-lande: ne cymst þú bútan ælmyssan⁽²⁾ on míne ge sýhðe.

16. Heald þá symbol tíde þæs monðes frum-sceata⁽³⁾ þínes weordes þe þú on lande sáwst, and on geres útgange⁽⁴⁾, þonne þu ge gaderast þíne wæstmas tó gædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man⁽⁵⁾ æt-ýwd⁽⁶⁾ beforan Dryhtne⁽⁷⁾.

18. Ne offra þú þínre on- sægdnesse blod⁽⁸⁾ uppan beorman⁽⁹⁾, ne se rysel⁽¹⁰⁾ ne be-lýfd⁽¹¹⁾ od morgen⁽¹²⁾.

19 Bring þíne húm-sceattas tó Godes húse

20. Nú ic sende míinne engel þæt he þe læde in-tó þáre stówe þe ic ge-gearwode⁽¹³⁾.

21. Gým⁽¹⁴⁾ his, and ge-hýr his stemne⁽¹⁵⁾, for-þám

(1) Niwe (I.) new, νεος, L. novus, G. neu, D. nieuw

(2) Ælmyssse (I. 3.) olms, (S. awmous,) gift would here have been better

(3) First fruits, fruma beginning, sceat (II. 2.) corn, value, profit, &c. hence shat, scot G. schatz treasure

(4) Ut-gang (II. 2.) aut-going, end, G. aus-gang.

(5) Lit. weaponed-man, the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers

(6) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówan) (I. 2.) to appear, show, &c.

(7) Dryhten (II. 2.) Lord, chief, dryht (II. 3.) troop, band.

(8) Blód (II. 1.) blood, G. blut, D. bloed.

(9) Beorme (I. 3.) barm, leaven, leavened bread. (10) II. 2. fat.

(11) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) to remain, G. b leiben, D. b-lýven.

(12) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) morn, morrow, G. and D. morgen.

(13) Gearwian to prepare, make yore or ready.

(14) Gýman (I. 2.) to take care of, care for, heed, attend to.

(15) Stemn = stefn voice; G. stimme, D. stem

he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngið, and míni nama is on him.

22 Ic beó þínra feónða feónd,

23. And þe in ge-læde tó Amorrea lande.

24. Ne ge eáð-méd⁽¹⁾ þú hira godas, ac to-brec hir an-línessa.

25 Þeówið Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eów, and do ælce un-trumnesse fiami eów,

26. And ge-íce⁽²⁾ eówer dagas,

27 And a-flýme⁽³⁾ þíne sýnd be-foran þe ,

28. And ic a-sende hyinetta⁽⁴⁾, þe aflymað Eseum⁽⁵⁾ and Chananeuni,

29. Twelf monðum ár þú in-fare.

* * * * *

31 Ic sette þíne ge-máero⁽⁶⁾ fram þá're Reádan⁽⁷⁾ Sæ oð Palastinas Sæ, and fram þá'm wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe⁽⁸⁾ wið hira godas,

33. Þý-læs híg þe l-e-swícon⁽⁹⁾.

⁽¹⁾ Eáð-médan (eáð-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, " how down to."* from eáð and mód.

⁽²⁾ Ge-ícan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out*, from eác

⁽³⁾ A-flyman (I. 2.) *to put to flight*, from fleám *flight*

⁽⁴⁾ Hyrnet hornet. ' ⁽⁵⁾ The Hivite, Vulg. " Hevænum."

⁽⁶⁾ Ge-máere (III. 1.) *boundary, P. mee;*

⁽⁷⁾ Reád (I.) *red* (I. 10th, D. rood

⁽⁸⁾ Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

⁽⁹⁾ Br-wítan (III. 2.) *to decene.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle*(¹).

* * * The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A D 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene(²) ig-land(³) is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brág; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-peóda(⁴), Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc(⁵), and Scyttisc(⁶), and Pyhtisc(⁷), and Bóc-leden(⁸). Æ'rost wéron búgend(⁹) þisses landes Bryttas(¹⁰) þa comon of Armo-rica(¹¹), and ge-sáeton (¹²) súðan-wearl Brytene æ'ost

A.D. 449 Her(¹³) Martianus and Valentinianus on-fengon ríce(¹⁴), and rícsodon seoton winter On heora dagum Hengest(¹⁵) and Horsa fram Wyrtgeorne(¹⁶) ge-laðode(¹⁷) Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton(¹⁸) Brytene on þám stede(¹⁹) þe is ge-nemued Yp-wines-fleót(²⁰), ærost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft(²¹) on hí(²²)

(¹) Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford

(²) II 2. Britatn

(³) Ig-land, ea-land, (II 1) e, *islaud*, G. ei-land, D. ey-land *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *isle*, Ile) with which it has no connexion.

(⁴) Ge-peód (II 3) *nation*.

(⁵) Lit. British-Welsh.

(⁶) Scottish

(⁷) Pictish

(⁸) Book-Latin, Romau

(⁹) For búend (II 2) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

(¹⁰) Brytte (II 2.) Britou.

(¹¹) A various reading has Armenia.

(¹²) Ge-sittan (II 1) *to occupy, settle in*.

(¹³) Here and below means *this year*.

(¹⁴) The Roman Empire

(¹⁵), II 2 Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horse*, G. *hengst*. Horsa too meant the same

(¹⁶) *Vortigern*

(¹⁷) Laðian (I 1) *to invite, G. laden*

(¹⁸) Secan ia here *to go to*, comp. the use of L. *peterere*.

(¹⁹) II 2 *Place, stead*, G. *statt, statte*.

(²⁰) *Fibb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; *feót stream, creek, fleet* is common in locname asl

(²¹) *Again, afterwards*

(²²) *Against them; in eo*

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gean Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige⁽¹⁾ hæfdon swá-hwar-swá hí comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle⁽²⁾ and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom seçgan Bryt-Walena⁽³⁾ náhtnesse⁽⁴⁾, and þæs landes cysta⁽⁵⁾. Hí þá sendon heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of prym mægðum Germanie⁽⁶⁾ :— of Eald-Seaxum⁽⁷⁾, of Englum⁽⁸⁾, of Iótum⁽⁹⁾. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware⁽¹⁰⁾, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seo mæd⁽¹¹⁾ þe nú eardað⁽¹²⁾ on Wiht⁽¹³⁾, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum⁽¹⁴⁾ þe man git hæt Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon Eást-Seaxan⁽¹⁵⁾, and Súð-Seaxan⁽¹⁶⁾, and West-Seaxan. Of

(¹) II 2 *victory*; G *sieg*

(²) Engle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2) *country of the Angles*, the present Sleswig

(³) Bryt-Wala (I 2) lit *British-Welhmon* the Anglo-Saxons called all not of Gothic race Walan or Wealas, equivalent to *strangers* or *foreigners*, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians *Walschen*, and anything strange or outlandish *walch*

(⁴) Náhtnes (II. 3) *goodness for nought, cowardice*

(⁵) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence*, pl. cysta *good things, abundance*.

(⁶) Gen. of Germania, see p. 13.

(⁷) Seaxa (I 2) *Saxon* the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A. S.

(⁸) See p. 19.

(⁹) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(¹⁰) *Dwellers in Kent* see p. 20.

(¹¹) = mægð, p. 5

(¹²) *Eardian to dwell*, from eard.

(¹³) Or Wiht-land *Isle of Wight*.

(¹⁴) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon

(¹⁵) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex, and part of Herts.

(¹⁶) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.

Angle comon (se á síð-ján stód wéstig⁽¹⁾ be-twix Iótum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle⁽²⁾, Middel-Engle⁽³⁾, Mearce⁽⁴⁾, and ealle Nord-Ymbra⁽⁵⁾. * * *

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene Augustinum, mid wel monegum⁽⁶⁾ munucum⁽⁷⁾ þa Godes word sceoldon bodian⁽⁸⁾ Angel-cynne * *

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode⁽⁹⁾ on kalendis Septembris⁽¹⁰⁾. Eád-wulf Nordan-Hymbra cyning wæs of his ríce a-drifен, and Heard-byrht bisceop on Hagustealdes-e⁽¹¹⁾ ford-ferde⁽¹²⁾. Eác on þisum ylcan geare piidie nonas Junii⁽¹³⁾ róde-tácn⁽¹⁴⁾ weard at-eówed⁽¹⁵⁾ on þám monan, ánes Wódnes-dæges⁽¹⁶⁾,

⁽¹⁾ Waste, deserts.

⁽²⁾ East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

⁽³⁾ The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

⁽⁴⁾ Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

⁽⁵⁾ Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern counties as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

⁽⁶⁾ Very many, a good number.

⁽⁷⁾ Munuc (II. 2.) monk; G. mönch, L. monachus.

⁽⁸⁾ To announce, proclaim, preach, hence to bode. boda messenger; G. bote, D. boode.

⁽⁹⁾ A-þýstrian to become dark, be eclipsed, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster dark, G. duster.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Sept. 1.: the Roman name for the day of the month was used sometimes, but not always: see p. 36. ⁽¹¹⁾ Hexham.

⁽¹²⁾ Went forth, departed, died.

⁽¹³⁾ June 4.

⁽¹⁴⁾ Sign of the Cross; ród (II. 3.) rood, Cross; tácn token, sign, G. zeichen, D. teeken. ⁽¹⁵⁾ At- for æt-, see p. 4.

⁽¹⁶⁾ "Of a Wednesday," as we still say.

innan þáre daginge⁽¹⁾; and eft on þisum geare tertio kalendas Septembris⁽²⁾ án wundor-lie tiendel⁽³⁾ weard at-eowd a-bútan þáre sunnan. *

And þý ylcan geare (A D. 853) sende Ædel-wulf cyning Ælf-ied his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo⁽⁴⁾ Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge gehál gode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam⁽⁵⁾. *

A D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Ædel-wulf-ín⁽⁶⁾ tó⁽⁷⁾ West-Seaxna ríce; and þæs ymb ænne monad⁽⁸⁾ gefeaht Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here⁽⁹⁾ lytle werode⁽¹⁰⁾ æt Wil-túne⁽¹¹⁾ and hine lange on dæ² ge-flýmde⁽¹²⁾, and þa l'eniscan áhton wæl-stówe⁽¹³⁾ ge-weald. And þæs geares wurdon ingon folc-gefeoht⁽¹⁴⁾ ge-soften wið þone here on þám cyne-ríce be súðan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men⁽¹⁵⁾, and cyninges þegnas oft ráda⁽¹⁶⁾ on-ridon þe man ná ne rínde⁽¹⁷⁾. And þæs geares

⁽¹⁾ Daging (see p. 67) dawn, dagian to dawn, O. daw

⁽²⁾ Aug 29 ⁽³⁾ Round, circle hence to trundle ⁽⁴⁾ Leo IV

⁽⁵⁾ Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation, an ancient custom of the Churches, see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon W. Bentley, &c.

⁽⁶⁾ Son of Æthelwulf, see p. 65.

⁽⁷⁾ Feng tó "took to," as is still said ⁽⁸⁾ One month after that

⁽⁹⁾ The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically "se here" the army, G. das heer: see p. 9.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Abl. with a little band werod II. 1

⁽¹¹⁾ Wil-tún Wilton

⁽¹²⁾ Ge flýman = a-flýman above.

⁽¹³⁾ Wæl-stów, slaughter-place, battle-field, G. wahl-platz.

⁽¹⁴⁾ Great battles, battles of nations

⁽¹⁵⁾ Ealdor-man (11L 2.) senator, chief; hence alderman.

⁽¹⁶⁾ Rúd (II 3) road, in-road, raid, foray, from rídan

⁽¹⁷⁾ Ríman to count, number. hence to rime; G. reimen, D. rijmen.

wéron of-slegene nigon eoſlas (¹), and án cyning, and þý geare namon West-seaxan frid (²) wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Hélf-red Hédel-wulfiŋ six nihtum (³) ær Ealra Háligræ Mæssan (⁴), se wæs cyning oſer eal Angel-cyn bútan þáin dæle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heold þæt ríce óðer-healf (⁵) gear læs þe þiyttig wintra (⁶).

VIII.—*Apollonius.* (⁷)

* * * Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called “Pericles Prince of Tyre.”

Sóð-líce mid-þy þ' þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum góðum cræftum swá wel wæs ȝr-togen (⁸), þú ge-feoll hyre mód on his lufe. Þá æfter þæs beórsclipes (⁹) ge-endunge, cwæd þæt

(¹) Earl *earl*

(²) Namon frid *made peace* frid (*II. 2.*) *peace*, G. *friede*.

(³) The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *mights*. of this our *se'n-night* (*seven-night*) and *fo'r'l'night* (*fourteen-night*) are relics.

(⁴) *All Hallows' Mass, Feast of All Saints* mæſſe I. 3.

(⁵) See p. 36.

(⁶) See p. 35, note 5.

(⁷) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25

(⁸) Teógan, (*tfgan*), *teon to draw &c., educate comp. L. er-ziehen; L. cducare from ducere.*

(⁹) Beórsclips (*II. 2.*) *feast, banquet.* beór (*II. 1.*) *beer.*

mæden tō þám cynge: Leófa fæder, þú l̄fdest
 me lytle ár þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-
 hwæt swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde⁽¹⁾. Arces-
 trates se cyng cwæd tō hyre: Gif him swá-hwæt-swá
 þú wile. Heó þá swíðe⁽²⁾ blíðe⁽³⁾ út-eóde and
 cwæd: Láreow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder
 leáfe twá hund pund⁽⁴⁾ goldes, and feower hund
 pund ge-wihte⁽⁵⁾ seolfres, and þone māstan dál⁽⁶⁾
 deór-wyrdan⁽⁷⁾ reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna.
 And heó þá þus cwæd tō þám þeówum mannum:
 Berað þis þing mid eów þe ic be-hét⁽⁸⁾ Apollonio
 mínum láreowe, and lecgad̄ innon búre⁽⁹⁾ be-foran
 mínum freónum þis wearð þá þus ge-dón æfter
 þáre cwene⁽¹⁰⁾ hæse⁽¹¹⁾, and ealle þa men hyre gife
 heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð lice ge-endode se
 ge-beórscepe, and þa men ealle a-rison, and gíetton
 þone cyng and þá cwene, and bædon híg ge-sunde⁽¹²⁾
 beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce⁽¹³⁾ Apollonius

(1) Hord (II. 2) *hoard, treasure.*

(2) Swíð (I) *strong, powerful, swíðe greatly, very, comp. L (valide) valde, F fort* (3) Blíðe *blithe, D. bliðe*

(4) Pund (II. 1.) *pound.* (5) Ge wiht (II. 3.) *weight, G. ge-wicht.*

(6) A very great deal

(7) Precious, deór dea; G. theuer, D. duur.

(8) Be-hatan (II. 2) *to promise, G. ver-heissen.*

(9) Búr (II. 2) *chamber, bower.*

(10) Cwen (II. 3.) *queen, quean* is likewise from cwen, which meant originally woman; γυνη

(11) Hæs (II. 3.) *command, be-hest, G. ge-heiss.*

(12) Ge-sund swund, whole, bade them fare-well; L. valere eos jusse-runt.

(13) So in like manner.

cwæd : þú góda cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen lare lufigend, beó ge ge-sunde He be-seáh⁽¹⁾ eác tó þámi þeówum mannum þe þæt mæden him for-gifен⁽²⁾ hæfde, and heom cwæd tó : Nimað þás þing mid eów þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán we sécan íre gæst-hús⁽³⁾ þæt we magon ús ge-restan.

| þá a-died þæt mæden þæt heó næfie eft Apollonum ne ge-sáwe swá hiade swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó hyre fæder and cwæd þú góda cyning, lícad þe wel þæt Apollonius þe þuili ús tó-dæg ge-gódod⁽⁴⁾ is. þus heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-reáfian hine? Se cyng cwæd : Wel þú cwæde : hát him findan hwar he hine næge wurd lícost⁽⁵⁾ ge-restan. þá dyde þæt mæden swá hvre be-boden wæs, and Apollonius on-feng þáre wununge⁽⁶⁾ þe him be-tæht⁽⁷⁾ wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces wurdscipes and frófre.

Ac þæt mæden hæfde un stille niht mid þáre lufe on-æled⁽⁸⁾ þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt Apollonige⁽⁹⁾, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit læg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht⁽¹⁰⁾ wæs, and

⁽¹⁾ Be-seón (III. 3.) *to look, look at.*

⁽²⁾ For-gifan (II. 1) *to give away, present, forgive.*

⁽³⁾ Inn, guest house, G. gast-haus *

⁽⁴⁾ Ge-gódian, *to endow, enrich*; G. *be gutern.*

⁽⁵⁾ Wurð-líc (II.) *honourable.* ⁽⁶⁾ Dwelling, habitation; G. *wohnung.*

⁽⁷⁾ Be-tæcan (I. 2.) *to commit, assign*; hence *betake.*

⁽⁸⁾ On-ælan (I. 2.) *to inflame.*

⁽⁹⁾ Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the g inserted as p. 41.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Light; G. *licht.*

ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. Þá cwæð se cyng: Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý ear þú þus ær-wacol⁽¹⁾? Þæt mæden cwæð: Me a-wehten⁽²⁾ þa ge-cneoridnessa⁽³⁾ þ ic ginstan-dæg⁽⁴⁾ ge-hýide; nu bidde ic þe forþám þæt þú be-fæste⁽⁵⁾ me innum cuman Apollonige tó láre⁽⁶⁾ Þá weard se cyng þearle⁽⁷⁾ ge-blissod⁽⁸⁾, and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæð. Mín dóhtor gyrnd þæt heó inoté leornian æt þe þa gesæligan⁽⁹⁾ láre þe þú caust, and gif þú wilt þisum oingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes íces mægna⁽¹⁰⁾ þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sá for-lure, ic þe þæt on land ge-staðelige⁽¹¹⁾. Þá-þá Apollonius þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædenne to láre, and hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leor oðe

* * * + *

Þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor⁽¹²⁾ wæs, þæt þar wære cumen sum cyngc⁽¹³⁾ mid his adume⁽¹⁴⁾, and mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

⁽¹⁾ Early-wakeful; comp. L. vigil

⁽²⁾ A-weccan (I. 2) to awake (act.) G er-wecken. the neut. is wacian (I. 1) or wakan (II. 3.); G wachen ⁽³⁾ Studies, accomplishments.

⁽⁴⁾ Yesterday, G gestern; comp. L. bestern-us

⁽⁵⁾ Be-fæstan (I. 2) to commit, intrust. ⁽⁶⁾ For instruction.

⁽⁷⁾ Pearl (L.) strong, þearle very, greatly; comp. swiðe above.

⁽⁸⁾ Blissian to rejoice; bliss (II. 3.) bliss, joy

⁽⁹⁾ Ge-sælig (I.) happy, blessed, G. selig: hence silly, O. sely.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Mægen (III. 1) power.

⁽¹¹⁾ Ge-staðelhan to establish, make good, from staðol station; whence staðol-first steady-fast, &c.

⁽¹²⁾ Here used for chief princess.

⁽¹³⁾ See p. 5.

⁽¹⁴⁾ Aðum son-in-law.

þæt ge-hýrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe
ge frætwode⁽¹⁾, and mid purpran ge-erýdde, and hyre
heáfod mid golde and mid gimnion⁽²⁾ ge-glengde⁽³⁾,
and mid mielum fæinnena⁽⁴⁾ heápe⁽⁵⁾ ymb-trymmed⁽⁶⁾, comi tó geanes þám cyngē⁽⁷⁾. Heú wæs sé-ðlīce
þealile wlitig⁽⁸⁾, and for þaie⁽⁹⁾ mielan lufe þáre
clænnesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar næié nán Dia an⁽¹⁰⁾
swa ge-cweme⁽¹¹⁾ swá heó

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þrit ge scáh he mid his
aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urning, and seollon
ealle tó hyre fótum and wéndon þæt heó Diana
wære seo gyden⁽¹²⁾ for hyre mielan beorhtnesse and
wlite. Þæt hálh⁽¹³⁾ eín⁽¹⁴⁾ wearð þá ge-openod, and
þa lác wéron in-ge-brohte; and Apollonius on-gan þa
sprecan and eweðan le fiam cild-háde wæs Apollo-
nus ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boen. Mid-þám-þe

⁽¹⁾ Ge-frætwian to adorn, frætu (Ill. 1) ornament, fret

⁽⁴⁾ Fæmne dænsel, L femina.

⁽⁵⁾ Heáp (ll. 2) *tioop, heap*, G haufé, D hoop.

(6) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, gird, a garment, &c

(7) *To meet the king*, comp. G dem Könige ent-gegen.

(*) *Beautiful, white* (II, 2) *beauty.*

^(*) = pâtre; at p 5, l 1, it should have been stated that $\ddot{\text{e}}$ is sometimes changed to $\acute{\text{e}}$, as well as to $\grave{\text{e}}$ ⁽¹⁹⁾ Dat. of Diana

(11) *Pleaseing, agreeable, from cwuman (cwuman) to come, comp. G ha-
quem con-venient.*

⁽¹²⁾ Feminine of god, see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gott-in.

(¹³) = hálig, see p. 5

⁽¹⁴⁾ Eng. era (H. 1) house room, see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be com tō fullon and-gite⁽¹⁾ þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán⁽²⁾ oððe fram æðelum mannum þæt ic ne cūðe: ic a-rædde⁽³⁾ Antiochus rædels⁽⁴⁾ þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor under-fenge me tó ge-mæccan ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestán horwe⁽⁵⁾ þai-tó ge-þeód⁽⁶⁾, and me þá syrwode⁽⁷⁾ tó of-sleánnē. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt for-fleáh⁽⁸⁾, þá weard ic on sáe for-liden⁽⁹⁾, and com tó Cyrenense⁽¹⁰⁾. Þá under-fengc me Arcestrates se cyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic æt nyhstan⁽¹¹⁾ ge-eainode⁽¹²⁾ þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan⁽¹³⁾ dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Deó fór þá mid me tó on-fónne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard⁽¹⁴⁾ hæbbe, a-cende on sáe, and hyre gást a-let⁽¹⁵⁾. Ic þú hí mid cyne-lícum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write⁽¹⁶⁾ on ciste⁽¹⁷⁾ a-legde⁽¹⁸⁾, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurd-líce

(1) And git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(2) Be-gán *to exercise, cultivate, attend to*.

(3) A-rædan *to read, guess*, G. er-rathen *to guess*

(4) II. 2 *riddle*, G. ratsel. (5) Horu (III. 1.) *pollution*.

(6) Ge-þeódan (I. 2.) *to join*.

(7) Sjíwan *to plot, searv* (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(8) For-fleón *to escape, flee from*.

(9) Shipwrecked, líðar. (III. 2.) *to sail, for-líðan to sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck.* (10) Cyene (11) At last.

(12) Earned, deserved, obtained

(13) A'-cenned = á-n-cenned *only begotten*. (14) Present.

(15) A-lætan = of-lætan *to let forth, give up*.

(16) Ge-writ (III. 1.) *writing, writ, inscription*

(17) Cist (II. 3.) *chest, coffin*, P. kist, G. kiste.

(18) Usually -lede, from -legan.

be-byrigde⁽¹⁾, and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þám mán-fullestan⁽²⁾ mannan to fédanne⁽³⁾. Fór me⁽⁴⁾ þá tó Egipta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe⁽⁵⁾: þá ic on-gean⁽⁶⁾ com, þá sædon hí me þæt míni dóhtor wære forð-faren⁽⁷⁾; and me wæs míni sár⁽⁸⁾ eal ge-ed-níwad.

Mid-þám-þe he þás þinge eal a-reht hæfde, Arcestrate sóð-líce his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte⁽⁹⁾. þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his ge-mæcca⁽¹⁰⁾ wære, ac sceáf⁽¹¹⁾ hí fiam him. Heó þá micelhe stefne clypode, and cwæd mid wópe: Ic eom Arcestrate þín ge-mæcca, Acestiates dóhtor þæs cynges, and þú eart Apollonius míni láreow þe me lærdest! þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná for gálnesse⁽¹²⁾ ac for wís-dóme! Hwar is míni dóhtor? He be-wende hine þá tó Thasian⁽¹³⁾ and cwæd: þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blis-sodon. And þæt wórd spriang geond eal þæt land þæt Apollonius se mæra cýngc hæfde funden his wíf; and þá weað or-mæte⁽¹⁴⁾ bliss, and þa or-

(1) (Be-) byrigan to bury.

(2) Mán-full wicked, mán (II 1) wickedness, sin, crime, mán-swæf a man-sworn, perjured man, G. mein-eid false oath.

(3) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(4) See p. 81.

(5) Heáf, heóf (II 2) sigh, groan, grief

(6) Again, back again.

(7) Forð-faran = forð-feran

(8) Pain, grief, sore.

(9) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clip round.

(10) Ge-mæcca mate serves for both genders, thua correct n. 9, p. 111.

(11) Scúfan (III 3) to shote, push, G. schüben, D. schuiven.

(12) Lust.

(13) The A S dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(14) Measurless, immense, from or- and metan to me- measure, see Additions, &c.

gana⁽¹⁾ wáeron ge-togene⁽²⁾, and þa býman⁽³⁾ ge-bláwene⁽⁴⁾, and þar weard blíðe ge-heórsциpe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cýnge and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran⁽⁵⁾ þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þáre mægðe on Ese-sum, heó fór mid hyre were⁽⁶⁾, and mid hyre aðume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ríce ge-healden⁽⁷⁾. Fór⁽⁸⁾ þá síð-þán tó Tyrium⁽⁹⁾ and ge-sette þar Aíhenagoras his aðum tó cýnge; fór þá sóð-líce þanon tó Tharsum mid his wife, and mid his dóhtor, and mid eyne-lícre fyrde⁽¹⁰⁾, and hét sona ge-læccan⁽¹¹⁾ Stianguilonem and Dio-nisiaden, and lædan be-foran him þar he sæt on his þyrm-setle⁽¹²⁾.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. *drawn*, from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows. (3) Býme *trumpet*.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) *to blow*, G. *blähen*.

(5) Gyngré (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*, G. *jungfer* is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (hr) II. 2. *man, husband*, L. *vir*, also wa- the Seythians (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) *Had been kept for A*

(8) He, *Apollonius went*.

(9) Copied probably from the L. "ad Tyrium" (as also Tharsum below), tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; G. *fahrt journey, &c.*

(11) I. 2. *to seize, catch*

(12) *Glory-seat, throne, þrym* II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius. Cap. xvii.*⁽¹⁾

* * * King Ælfred translated Boethius de Consolatione Philosophiae, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mód⁽²⁾ sæde þæt him næfre seó mægd and seó gitsung⁽³⁾ for-wel⁽⁴⁾ ne lícode⁽⁵⁾, bútan tó láðe⁽⁶⁾ he tilade⁽⁷⁾.

þá se Wís dóm þá þis leóð⁽⁸⁾ a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swígode⁽⁹⁾ he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mód and þus cwæd: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes⁽¹⁰⁾ ! hwæt⁽¹¹⁾ þú wást þæt me næfie seó gitsung and seó ge-mægd þisses eord-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíðe ne gyrnde þisses eord-lícan rices. Búton á ic wilnode þeah and-weorces⁽¹²⁾ tó þán weorce

(¹) From Mr Cardale's edition, slightly altered

(²) II. 1 neuter, while G. muth is masculine another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9

(³) II. 3 *desire, covetousness, gitsian to covet.*

(⁴) *Very well, too well, for- is sometimes intensive, for-nean well nigh, for-swíðe too much, excessively.*

(⁵) See p. 86.

(⁶) *Unwillingly, see p. 70. In (1.) hateful, leathsome.*

(⁷) *Tilian (teolian) to toil, till, &c. see p. 42.*

(⁸) III. 1. *song, lay, G. lied*

(⁹) *Swígian to be silent, G. schweigen.*

(¹⁰) *Reason, discretion, acendan (p. 54.) to divide, discriminate, &c; G. scheiden.*

(¹¹) *Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.*

(¹²) *And-weore (II. 1) matter, material, substance*

þe me be-boden wæs tō wyrkanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-líce⁽¹⁾ and ge-risen-líce⁽²⁾ mihte steóran⁽³⁾ and reccan⁽⁴⁾ þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nánne cræft cýðan⁽⁵⁾, ne nánne an-weald reccan ne steóran, búton tólum⁽⁶⁾ and and-weorce: þæt býð ælces cræftes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton⁽⁷⁾ wyrkan ne mæg. Þæt býð þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne⁽⁸⁾, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod⁽⁹⁾: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men⁽¹⁰⁾, and fyrd-men⁽¹¹⁾, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan piſſum tólum nán cyning his cæſt ne mæg cýðan. Þæt is eāc his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-ferscipum⁽¹²⁾ bi-wiste⁽¹³⁾; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó búgienne⁽¹⁴⁾, and gifta⁽¹⁵⁾, and wæpna⁽¹⁶⁾, and mete, and ealo⁽¹⁷⁾, and cláðas⁽¹⁸⁾, and ge-hwæt

⁽¹⁾ Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful*

⁽²⁾ Ge-risen-líc (II.) *fit, proper, hit ge-rist it is fit, becoming, = L. decet.*

⁽³⁾ Or stýran (I., 2.) *to steer, guide, govern, G. steuern, D. stuuren.*

⁽⁴⁾ I. 3. *reckon for, give an account of.*

⁽⁵⁾ *To make known, show forth, practise.*

⁽⁶⁾ Tól (II. 1.) *tool*

⁽⁷⁾ *Þæt—búton without which.*

⁽⁸⁾ *To rule with rícsian, (ríxian), L. reg-ere, rex-i*

⁽⁹⁾ *Mannian to man*

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Prayer-men, clergy.*

⁽¹¹⁾ *Aimy-men, soldiers*

⁽¹²⁾ *Ge-ferscipe (II. 2.) company, ge-fera companion, O. fere.*

⁽¹³⁾ *Bi-wist (II. 3.) provision, food: wist feast, &c.*

⁽¹⁴⁾ *Búgian=búan.*

⁽¹⁵⁾ *Gift (II. 3.) gift, plur. gifta usually means marriage.*

⁽¹⁶⁾ *Wæpea (III. 1.) weapon, D. wapen. (17) Ealo (-u) (III. 3. aſe*

⁽¹⁸⁾ *Cláð (II. 2.) cloth, garment, G. kleid.*

þæs þe þa þreo ge-fe scipas be-hófiad: ne mæg he bútan þisum þis tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þisum tórum nán þára þinga wyrean þe him be-boden is tó wyrcanne. Foi-þý ic wilnode and weordes þone an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt míne cræftas and an-weald ne wúrden foi-gitene and for-holene⁽¹⁾; tor-þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-ealdod⁽²⁾ and for-swígod⁽³⁾, gif he býð bútan Wís-dóme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá⁽⁴⁾ þurh dysige⁽⁵⁾ ge-dón býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan. Þæt is nú hraðost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode weord-ful-líce⁽⁶⁾ tó lybbanne þá-hwile-þe ic lyfode, and æfter mínum lífe þám monnum tó láfanne þe æfter nie wáren míni ge-mynd⁽⁷⁾ on gódum weorcum.

Cap. xxxiv. 10.

* * * A free translation of part of prosa ii. lib. III.

þá cwæd ic: Ne mæg ic náne cwice wuht on-gitan þára þe wíte⁽⁸⁾ hwæt hit⁽⁹⁾ wille oððe hwæt hit nille, þe un-ge-néð⁽¹⁰⁾ lyste for-weordan. For-þám ælc wuht wolde beón hál and lybba þára þe me cwice

⁽¹⁾ For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*, G. *ver-behlen*.

⁽²⁾ For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

⁽³⁾ For-swígian *to pass in silence*, G. *ver-schweigen*, here and above mark the force of *for*

⁽⁴⁾ Usually *swá-hwæt-swá*.

⁽⁵⁾ *Folly, dysig foolish, absurd; hence dizzy.*

⁽⁶⁾ *Worthily, honorably.* ⁽⁷⁾ II. 1. *memory, mind.*

⁽⁸⁾ *Wíte singular agreeing with wuht and not with þára þe, see p. 78*

⁽⁹⁾ *Hit neut while wuht is fem*

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Néðan=nyðan*

þined, bútan ic nát be treówum, and be wyrтum⁽¹⁾ and be swylcum ge-sceaftum⁽²⁾ swylce⁽³⁾ náne sáwle nabbað. þá smearcodel⁽⁴⁾ he and cwæd: Ne þearfist þú nó⁽⁵⁾ be þám⁽⁶⁾ ge-sceaftum tweógan⁽⁷⁾, þe mæ þe⁽⁸⁾ be þám óðium Hú ne miht þú ge-seón þæt ælc wyrт and ælc wudu⁽⁹⁾ wile weaxan on þán lande sélost⁽¹⁰⁾ þe him betst ge-ríst, and him ge-cynde⁽¹¹⁾ býð and ge-wune-líc⁽¹²⁾, and þær þær hit ge-fret⁽¹³⁾, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealewigan⁽¹⁴⁾? Sumra wyrta oððe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnnum⁽¹⁵⁾, sumra on merscum⁽¹⁶⁾, sumra on mórum⁽¹⁷⁾, sumra on cludum⁽¹⁸⁾, sumra on barum⁽¹⁹⁾ sondum⁽²⁰⁾. Nim þonne swá wudu swa

⁽¹⁾ Wyrt (II. 3) *herb, uort.*

⁽²⁾ Ge sceaf (II. 3) *creature*

⁽³⁾ Swyld—swyld answers to L. *talis—qualis.*

⁽⁴⁾ Smearcian to smink, *smile*

⁽⁵⁾ Nó=ná.

⁽⁶⁾ See p. 30

⁽⁷⁾ Tweógan, tweón (III. 3 See p. 60.) *to doubt, from twá, comb dōin-ξειη, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from δοια (ðvo), duo, zwei*

⁽⁸⁾ *Any more than.*

⁽⁹⁾ III. 2 *uood, D. woud.*

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Best sál good, excellent.*

⁽¹¹⁾ *Kind, kindly, natural. ge-cynd (II. 3) nature, kind.*

⁽¹²⁾ *Common, usual, G. ge-wohnlich.*

⁽¹³⁾ *Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites fretan (I. G. fressen) to eat, devour, fret*

⁽¹⁴⁾ *Fade, G. ver-welken, P. welk.*

⁽¹⁵⁾ Dún (II. 3) *down, hill, mountain, hence don in local names: G. díne, D. dum, F. dune is a sand-hill near the sea.*

⁽¹⁶⁾ Mersc (II. 2) *marsch, P. mesh.*

⁽¹⁷⁾ Mór (II. 2) *moor; D. moer.*

⁽¹⁸⁾ Clud (II. 2) *rock, cliff*

⁽¹⁹⁾ Bær (II.) *bare, G. bar*

⁽²⁰⁾ Sand, sond (II. 2.) *sand*

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þáre stówe þe his eard and æðelo⁽¹⁾ býð on tó weaxanne, and sete on un-cyndre⁽²⁾ stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwð hit þær náuht, ac for-searað⁽³⁾; for-þám ælces landes ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-lícne wudu tydrige⁽⁴⁾; and hit swa déð, fridað⁽⁵⁾, and fyrðrað⁽⁶⁾ swíðe georne⁽⁷⁾, swá longe swá heora ge-cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú fo-hwý ælc sád⁽⁸⁾ grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó ciðum⁽⁹⁾ and tó wyrt-rumum⁽¹⁰⁾ weorðe on þáre eorðan, búton for-þý þe hí teóhhiað⁽¹¹⁾ þæt se stemm⁽¹²⁾ and se helm⁽¹³⁾ móte þý fæstor and þý leng standan? Hwý ne miht þu on-gitan, þeah þu hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se þe þæs treowes on twelf monðum ge-weaxedð, þæt he on-ginnð of þám wyrt-iumum, and swá úp-weardes gréwð oð þone stemm, and síð-þán and-lang þæs piðan⁽¹⁴⁾, and and-lang þáre rinde⁽¹⁵⁾ oð þone helm, and síð-þán æfter⁽¹⁶⁾ þám bogum⁽¹⁷⁾, oð-þæt hit

⁽¹⁾ *Nature.*

⁽²⁾ *Un-cynde* (1) *un-kind, unnatural.*

⁽³⁾ *For-searian to fade, become sear.*

⁽⁴⁾ *Tydrian to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring progeny.*

⁽⁵⁾ *Friðian to make flourish, grow well, frið II. 2 peace, G. friede*

⁽⁶⁾ *Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.*

⁽⁷⁾ *Willingly, readily, earnestly, G. gerne.*

⁽⁸⁾ *Sád (II. 1.) seed, G. saat, D. zaad.*

⁽⁹⁾ *Cið (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.*

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Wyrt-ruma root*

⁽¹¹⁾ *Teóhhian to resolve, endeavour.*

⁽¹²⁾ *Stem, trunk*

⁽¹³⁾ *Crown, head, top, helm-et.*

⁽¹⁴⁾ *Frða pith; D. pit.*

⁽¹⁵⁾ *Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark, G. rinde.*

⁽¹⁶⁾ *Beh (II. 2.) bough.*

⁽¹⁷⁾ *Along, like L. secundum.*

út-a-springð⁽¹⁾ on leáfum⁽²⁾, and on blostmum⁽³⁾, and on blædum⁽⁴⁾? Hwý ne miht þú on-gítan þætte ælc wuht cwices byð innan-weard hnescost⁽⁵⁾, and utan-weard heardlost⁽⁶⁾? Hwæt þú miht ge seon hú þæt treów byð utan ge-scyrped⁽⁷⁾, and be-wæfed⁽⁸⁾ mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa stearcan⁽⁹⁾ stormas, and eac wið þære sunnan hæto on sumera⁽¹⁰⁾. Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundlīge swylcra gesceafta úres Sceoppendes⁽¹¹⁾, and hurn⁽¹²⁾ þæs Sceoppendes? And þeah we his nū wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan⁽¹³⁾ medem-líce⁽¹⁴⁾ úres Sceoppendes willan, and an-weald, hú his ge-sceafta weaxad⁽¹⁵⁾ and eft waniað⁽¹⁶⁾ þonne þæs tima⁽¹⁷⁾ cymð, and of heora sæde weorðad⁽¹⁸⁾ eft ge-ed-níwade⁽¹⁹⁾, swylce hi þonne wuðdon tó ed-sceafta⁽²⁰⁾?

(1) Ut-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(2) Leaf (II. 1.) *leaf, G. laub.*

(3) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom, D. bloessem.*

(4) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch, G. blatt, D. blad *leaf, blaß.**

(5) Hnesc (I.) *soft, tender, nesh.*

(6) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover, sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf.**

(7) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe, wæfels garment.*

(8) Stearc (I.) *stark, strong, violent, G. stark.* (9) See p. 15.

(10) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator, scyppan to create, G. schaffen, schoffen, D. scheppen*

(11) *At least, at all events*

(12) *Reckon, tell up.*

(13) *Fitly, uonthulu, mederne midahng, moderate, meet.*

(14) *Wanian to wane, from wana wan.*

(15) *The season for that*

(16) See p. 42

(17) *Ed-sceaft (II. 3.) new creation as if they then became newly created.*

CHAPTER IX.

VERSE EXTRACTS.

I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration*⁽¹⁾, or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c : few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two unemphatic, and some

(¹) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with hue and final rime, and syllabic metre, it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Plowman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A. S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example⁽¹⁾ :

Hú <i>lomp</i> ⁽²⁾ eów on láde ⁽³⁾	How befell it you on <i>your</i> <i>voyage</i>
leófa Beó-wulf,	dear Beowulf,
þá þú færinga	when thou suddenly
feor ge-hogodes,	far off determinedst
sæcce ⁽⁴⁾ sécean	warfare to seek
ofer sealt wæter,	over <i>the</i> salt water,
hilde ⁽⁵⁾ tó <i>Heorote</i> ⁽⁶⁾ ?	battle at Heorot?
Ac þú Hróð-gáre	Hast thou then Hróthgár
wið cūdne wean ⁽⁷⁾	against <i>his</i> known plague
wihte ge-bétttest ⁽⁸⁾ ,	ought booted,
márum þeódne ⁽⁹⁾ ?	<i>the</i> famous prince?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *láde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leófa* in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(1) Beowulf, ed. Kemble I 3969—79.

(2) Límpa (III. 1) *to happen*.

(3) Ládu (III 3.) líðan *to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(4) Sæc (II 3) hence *sack* of a town.

(5) Hild (II 3.) *battle, war*.

(6) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(7) Wea *evil, misfortune*.

(8) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to*, bót (II. 3) *boot, profit*.

(9) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th: the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called unequal feet adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wid* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period, the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe ædeline</i>	Without round <i>the noble</i>
<i>englas stódon.</i>	<i>angels stood.</i>
<i>Eordan æ'ht-ge-streón,</i>	<i>Earth's possessions,</i>
<i>æppledē gold.</i>	<i>applied⁽¹⁾ gold</i>

In the first example the sub letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn f:om-líce</i> (?)	<i>He asked prudently</i>
<i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>the beginning and end.</i>
<i>Scéán scír</i> (?) <i>werod,</i>	<i>Shone the bright host,</i>
<i>scyldas líton.</i>	<i>shields gleamed.</i>

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

(1) Hence *d-appled*, as asphodel (O. *affodil*) h-s become *d-affodil*, *d-appled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-graauw*: comp. F. *gris-purpuré*.

(2) From *brave*. *wag-ge*. G. *fromm*.

(3) *Clear, sheer*; G. *schier*.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand: viz a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, æt, oð, of, geond, þurh; as,

A-rædde and a-rehte *That he* should read and
 relate

hwæt seó ?ún(¹) bude. what the rune bade

þonne be-hófæd When it behoveth
se-þe her wunað. him that here dwelleth.

þá ge-uorhte he þurh his Then wrought he through
wís-dóm his wisdom
tyn engla uerod. ten legions of angels

To-sweóp hine and to- *He* swept and dashed it
suende away
þurh his swíðan miht through his strong might.

þý-læs þú for-uorðe Lest thou perish
mid þisum uær-logan (²) with these false ones

Se-þe æt-feohtan Who to fight
frum-gárum (³)— with *the* patriarchs—

(¹) Rún (II. 3.) *a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph*, here the *hand-writing on the wall* hence *ta-round, whisper*, G. *raunen*

(²) Wær-loga *a breaker of faith*, hence *var-lock* wær (II. 3.) *a promise, compact, loga a lyer*, from leógan *to lye*

(³) Gár (II. 2) *a (missile) weapon, spear* (= L. *telum*), *chief*. It forms part of many proper names, as Gár-mund, Eád-gár Edgar, &c.

þá híe gielp-sceadan⁽¹⁾ Since them *those* braggart-rebel-

of-gifen hæfdon. had given up

| Síð-þán híe feóndum After they *the* foes
oð-faren hæfdon had escaped.

Geond-folein fýre Filled through with fire
and fær-cyle⁽²⁾. and intense cold.

Wylm⁽³⁾ þurh-wódon⁽⁴⁾ *They* the flame had passed
through
swá him wiht ne sceód— so that them no whit hurt—

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and sometimes do not, as,

And begen þa beornas And both the warriors
þe him big stódon who stood by him
Big-standað me strange Stand by me strong com-
ge-neátas⁽⁵⁾ rades
þa ne willað me æt þám who will not fail me at
stríðe⁽⁶⁾ ge-swícan the strife.

⁽¹⁾ Gilp (II. 2.) *boast*, *sceaða enemy, robber, &c.*

⁽²⁾ Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*, in composition it implies *suddenness, danger or the like, fier-líc dangerous*, G. *ge fahr danger, ge-fahr-lich dangerous* Cyle II. 2., hence *chill*, G. *kuhle*.

⁽³⁾ Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. *aestus*); *welan, weallan to boil, G. wallen.*

⁽⁴⁾ Wadan (II. 3.) *to go; L. vadere.*

⁽⁵⁾ Ge-neát; G. *ge-noss*, D. *ge-noot*.

⁽⁶⁾ Stríð (II. 2.) G. *streit*, D. *strijd*.

<i>pæt we þær eágum</i>	What we there with <i>our</i>
	eyes
<i>on-lóciad.</i>	look upon.
<i>On-hycgad nu</i>	Think now on
<i>hálige mihte.</i>	<i>the holy might</i>

<i>And þurh ofer-metto</i>	And through pride
<i>sóhton óðer land.</i>	<i>they sought another land.</i>
<i>Uton ofer-hycgan</i>	Let us despise
<i>helm⁽¹⁾ þone miclan.</i>	<i>the great Supreme.</i>

<i>Eorðan ymb-hwyrft</i>	Earth's circuit
<i>and úp-rodor⁽²⁾.</i>	<i>and the upper sky.</i>
<i>Heofon ymb-hwearfest,</i>	<i>Thou compassest heaven,</i>
<i>and þurh þine hálige</i>	<i>and through thy holy</i>
<i>miht—</i>	<i>might—</i>

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

<i>Him þí Adam</i>	Him then Adam
<i>and-swarode.</i>	answered.

<i>Un-lytel dæl</i>	No little part
<i>eordan ge-sceafta.</i>	of earth's creatures.

(¹) Helm is the top of anything, see p 133, n. 13.

(²) Rodor (II 2.) heaven, sky.

Ne hí ed-cerres⁽¹⁾
æfre móton wénan.

Nor they for return
ever could hope.

Hæfde þá se æðeling
in-ge-þancum⁽²⁾—

Had then the noble
fervently—

Him þæt tácen weað
þær he tó-starode⁽³⁾.

To him that a token was
where he stared.

II.—Metres of Boethius⁽⁴⁾.

- The following is King Ælfred's translation of Boethius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-þe wille wyrean
wæstm-bære lond,
a-teó of þám æcere
ærest sona
fearn⁽⁵⁾, and þornas⁽⁶⁾,
and fyrsas, swá-same⁽⁷⁾
weód⁽⁸⁾,

He that will work
fruitful land,
let him pluck off the field
first straightway
fern, and thorns,
and furzes, as also weeds,

(1) Cer, cyr (II. 2) *tun*, hence *char a turn of work*; *cyrax to turn, re-turn*, G. *kehren*.

(2) Adverb formed from the dative plural, see p. 70. Comp. G. *inge-denk* *mindful, thoughtful*.

(3) Starian; G. *starren*, D. *staaren*.

(4) Chiefly from the Rev S. Fox's edition.

(5) P. *vearn*, G. *farn-kraut*.

(6) *Þorn*, G. *dorn*.

(7) Same is connected with our *same*.

(8) *Weód* (II. 1.) D. *w ðd*

þa þe willad
 wel hwær⁽¹⁾ derian
 clánum hwæte,
 þv-læs he cida-leás⁽²⁾
 licge on þám lande.
 Is leóð.⁽³⁾ ge-hwám
 þeos oðru bysen
 efn be-héfe⁽⁴⁾ ;
 þæt is þætte þinceð⁽⁵⁾
 þegna ge-hwylcum
 huniges⁽⁶⁾ beð-bieád
 healfe þý swétre,
 gif he hwene⁽⁷⁾ aér
 huniges teare⁽⁸⁾,
 bitres on-byrgað
 Býð eác swí-same
 monna ágg-liwlc
 micle þý fægema
 líðes⁽⁹⁾ wedres⁽¹⁰⁾,
 gif hine lytle w
 stormas ge stondad⁽¹¹⁾,
 that will
 everywhere hurt
 the clean wheat,
 lest it gern-less
 lie on the land.
 Is to all people
 this other example
 even as needful;
 that is that seemeth
 to every man
 honey's bee-bread
 half the sweeter,
 if he a little ere
 the honey's drop,
 something bitter tasteth.
 Is eke in like wise
 every man
 much the gladder
 of fair weather,
 if him a little ere
 storms assail,

(¹) Wel prefixed is intensive, wel-oft *very often*, wel-hraðe *very soon*.

(²) Crð *shoot growth of any kind*, hence *kid*, used either of a child or a young animal. comp. the uses of *imp.*, *scion*, *sprig*, &c.

(³) Leóðe *people, persons*, G. *leute*, D. *lieden*.

(⁴) l'e-hofian *to need, be-hove*

(⁶) See Additions, &c.

(⁶) G. *honig*.

(⁷) Hwene, *hwon a little*, S. *a wheen*.

(⁸) Tear (II. 2.) *tear*, G. *zabre*.

(⁹) Líðe *tender, mild, lithe*, G. *linde* observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(¹⁰) Weder (II. 1.) G. *wetter*, D. *weder*.

(¹¹) Observe the force of *ge-*, see p. 64.

and se stearca⁽¹⁾ wind
nordan and eástan.
Nænígum þúhte
dæg on þonc⁽²⁾,
gíf seó dimme niht
ær ofer eldum⁽³⁾
egesan⁽⁴⁾ ne bróhte.
Swá pincð ára ge-hwæm
eoñd-búendra
seó sóðe ge-sæld⁽⁵⁾
simle þe betere,
and þý wyrsumre,
þe he wita má,
heardia hænða⁽⁶⁾,
her a-dieóged⁽⁷⁾
þú meaht eác nicle þý éð. and the violent wind
from north and east.
To none would seem
the day delightful,
if the dim night
before over men
terror had not brought.
So seemeth to every one
of *the* earth-dwellers
the true happiness
ever the better,
and the winsomer,
as he more plagues,
and hard afflictions,
here suffereth
Thou mayst eke much the
easier
on móð-sefan
sóðe ge-sælda
sweótolor ge-cnáwan,
and tó heora cíddæ⁽⁸⁾
be-cuman síð-pán,
gíf þú úp-a-týlst
in *thy* mind
true happinesses
clearlier know,
and to their country
come afterwards,
if thou pluckest up

(1) Stearc *stark, strong*, G. stark, D. sterke.

(2) Þonc þanc^(II. 2.) *thank*, G. dank: comp. L. gratiae and gratua.

(3) Eld, yld^(II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(4) Egesa = ege *aue, dread*. (5) II. 3. from sél, sái *good*.

(6) Hænðu (*hýnðu*) III. 3.; heán *abject, miserable*

(7) (A-)dreúgan^(III. 8.) *to suffer*; S. dree.

(8) Cýða^(III. 3.) also *acquaintance, knowledge*, hence *kith*.

térest sona,
 and þú a-wyrt-walast
 of ge-wit-loc in⁽¹⁾
 leáse ge-sælda,
 swá swá londes-ceorl⁽²⁾
 of his æcere list⁽³⁾
 yfel weód monig.
 Síð þán ic þe secge
 þæt þú sweótole meaht
 sóðe ge-sælda
 sona on-cnáwan⁽⁴⁾,
 and þú æfre ne 1ecst
 æmiges þinges
 ofer þa áne,
 gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.

first forthwith,
 and thou rootest
 out of *thy* understanding
 false happinesses,
 as *the* husbandman
 off his field gathers
 many *an* evil weed.
 Aftwards I say to thee
 that thou clearly mayst
 true happinesses
 soon recognise,
 and thou never wilt reck
 for anything
 above them alone,
 if thou them quite under-
 standest.

(¹) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) *wit, loca* *fold, locker, place shut or locked up.*

(²) Ceorl man (free not noble) *husband, churl, S. carl, G. ke1*

(³) Lesan (II. 1.) *to gather, pick, hence lease, to glean. G. lessan to gather* *read, comp. L. legere.*

(⁴) Comp. G. er-kennen.

III.—*Cædmon* (¹).

* * * Cædmon, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streoneshalh or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild : he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr Thorpe's preface to his edition of Cædmon, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her cérest ge-sceóp	Here first shaped
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
Helm (²) eal-wihta,	Chief of all creatures,
heofon and eordan,	heaven and earth,
rodor a-rérde,	<i>the</i> firmament reared,
and þis rúme (³) land	and this spacious land
ge-stadelode	established
strangum mihtum,	by <i>his</i> strong powers,
Fréa (⁴) ael-mihtig.	<i>the</i> Lord almighty.
Folde wæs þá gyt	<i>The</i> earth was then yet
græse un-gréne;	with grass not green ;

(¹) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(²) See p. 133. n. 13.

(³) Rúm wide, roomy

(⁴) i.e. frau (*noble*) woman, lady is connected with frea.

gár-secg⁽¹⁾ þeahte,
 sweart⁽²⁾ sin-nihte,
 síde⁽³⁾ and wide,
 wonne⁽⁴⁾ wegas.
 þa wæs wuldor-torht
 heofon-weardes gást
 ofer holm⁽⁵⁾ boren
 míclum spédmum⁽⁶⁾ :
 Metod⁽⁷⁾ engla héht,
 lifes Bryita⁽⁸⁾,
 leóht forð-cuman
 ofer rúnne giund⁽⁹⁾.
 Raðe wæs ge-sylléd
 heáh-cyninges hás;
 him wæs hálig leóht
 ofer wéstenne,
 swá se Wyhta be-beád.
 þa ge-sundrode
 sigora⁽¹⁰⁾ Waldend
 oter lago flóde
 leóht wið þeóstrum⁽¹¹⁾,
 ocean covered,
 swart in eternal night,
 far and wide,
 the dusky ways
 Then was the glory-bright
 heaven's Guardian's spirit
 over the deep born
 with great speed.
 the Creator of angels bade,
 life's Distributor,
 light come forth
 over the wide abyss.
 Quickly was fulfilled
 the high King's behest;
 for him was holy light
 over the waste,
 as the Maker commanded
 Then sundered
 the Ruler of triumphs
 over the water-flood
 light from dar'ness,

⁽¹⁾ An obscure mythological word, gár (II. 2) *weapon*, secg *man*, warrior.

⁽²⁾ Black, swart, swarth; G. schwarz, D. zwart.

⁽³⁾ Síd use.

⁽⁴⁾ Won, wan uan, dark.

⁽⁵⁾ Holm means also an *island in the sea*; Steep-holm, Born-holm, &c.

⁽⁶⁾ Spéd (II. 3) *success, prosperity, speed*, D. spoed

⁽⁷⁾ From metan to mete, *measure* He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven"

⁽⁸⁾ Bryttian to distribute

⁽⁹⁾ II. 2. *ground, bottom, depth*; G. grund.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Sigor (II. 2.) = *sige victory*.

⁽¹¹⁾ þeóstru = þýstru.

sceade ⁽¹⁾ wið sciman ⁽²⁾ ;	shade from brightness;
sceóp þá bám, naman,	created then for both, names,
lifes Brytta	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs árest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through the Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned ;	day named ;
wlíte-beorhte ge-sceaft !	beauty-bright creation !
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Freán æt frymðe ⁽³⁾	the Lord at the beginning
ford-bære ⁽⁴⁾ (tíd.)	the teeming time.

Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
yrringa ⁽⁵⁾ spræc :	angrily spake :
Wend ⁽⁶⁾ þe from wynne ⁽⁷⁾ ;	Tuín thee from joy ;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-wealde ;	be in subjection ;
mid weres egsan	with fear of thy husband
hearde ge nearwad ⁽⁸⁾ ,	hardly straitened,
hean, þowian ⁽⁹⁾	abject, suffer for
þura dæda ge-dwild ⁽¹⁰⁾ —	thy deeds' error—

⁽¹⁾ For seadwe , sceadu (-o) (II. 2) G schattg.⁽²⁾ Scima light, skimmer.⁽³⁾ Frymð (II. 1)⁽⁴⁾ Lit for'h-bearing.⁽⁵⁾ See p 70—1 , from yrre (II 2.) ire, anger ; L ira.⁽⁶⁾ Wendan to turn, uend, go , G. wenden.⁽⁷⁾ Wyu (II 3) pleasure , G wonne⁽⁸⁾ Ge-nearwian, from nearu to make narrow, afflict, oppress.⁽⁹⁾ Hence throe.⁽¹⁰⁾ II. 3 dwelian te ory.

deádes bídán ;	death abide ;
and þurh wóp ⁽¹⁾ and heáf,	and through weeping and moan,
on woruld cennan ⁽²⁾ ,	into <i>the</i> world bear,
þurh sár ⁽³⁾ micel,	through much pain,
sunu and dóhtor.	son and daughter.
A-beád eác Adame	Announced eke to Adam
éce Díyhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
lifes Leóht-luma,	Author of life's light,
láð ærendle ⁽⁴⁾ :	<i>the</i> dire errand :
þú sceant (ðeine	'Thou shalt <i>another</i>
édel ⁽⁵⁾ scéan,	country seek,
wyn-leásran wíc,	a joyless dwelling,
and on wiæc ⁽⁶⁾ hweorf-	and into exile go,
an ⁽⁷⁾ ,	
nacod ⁽⁸⁾ , níed-wædla ⁽⁹⁾ ,	naked, <i>a</i> needy beggar,
neorxna-wanges ⁽¹⁰⁾	of Paradise's
dúgedum be-dálded :	blessings deprived :
þe is ge-dal witod ⁽¹¹⁾	to thee is <i>a</i> parting de- creed
kíces ⁽¹²⁾ and sáwle.	of body and soul.

(¹) II. 2. hence *u hōp.*

⁽²⁾ I 2 comp *yewiu*, L genere, hence to *kindle*

(3) II. I ~~one~~

(⁴) III, I from ar messenger.

(⁵) II. 2 *native country, home.*

(6) II 3

(7) III. 1. to turn, return, go.

(9) Nied = ned

⁽¹⁰⁾ Neorxna-wang (II 2) a word of doubtful etymology, wang is plain, field. ⁽¹¹⁾ Wition to decide, decree, hence wiod-lise.

(11) *Wutian to decide, decree*, hence *wutod-lice-*

(12) *Lic* (II. 1) *corpse, dead body*, G *leich*, D *lijk* hence *lich-gate* to Churchyard, *like-wake* watching a corpse, &c.

Hwæt! þú láð-líce Lo ! thou foully
 wróhte⁽¹⁾ on-stealdest, crime didst commit;
 for-þón þú winnan⁽²⁾ therefore thou shalt la-
 scealt, bour,
 and on eoðan þe and on earth to thee
 þíne and-líne⁽³⁾ thy livelihood
 selfa ge-rácan⁽⁴⁾, thyself obtain,
 wegan⁽⁵⁾ swátig⁽⁶⁾ wear a sweaty face,
 hleor⁽⁷⁾, hleor⁽⁷⁾,
 þinne hláf etan, thy bread eat,
 þenden þú hei leofast, while thou here livest,
 oð-þæt þe 'o heortan until thee at heart
 hearde gríped⁽⁸⁾ hardly gripeth
 adl⁽⁹⁾ un-liðe, ungentle ailment,
 þe þú on æple⁽¹⁰⁾ aér which thou in *the apple*
 erst
 selfa for-swulge⁽¹¹⁾; thyself swallowedst down;
 for-þón þú sweltan scealt. therefore thou shalt die.
 Hwæt! we nú ge-hýad Lo ! we now hear

(¹) Wróht (II. 3.) ; wrégan to accuse, comp. L *crimen*.

(²) Winnan (III. 1.) to battle, struggle, toil, also to win; ge-winn la-
bour, &c.

(³) And-lífn II. 3.

(⁴) I. 2. lit. *reach*, G *reichen*, D. *reiken*.

(⁵) II I to *wag*, *mote*, *bear*, hence wág *way* (*weight*), wág *wave*,
wægn *wagon*.

(⁶) Swát (II. 2) sweat, G. *schweiss*, D. *sweet*.

(⁷) II. 1. *jaw*, *cheek*, hence *countenance*, *complexion*, O. *lere*.

(⁸) Grípan (III. 2.) G. *greifen*, D. *grijpen*.

(⁹) II. 3 *ail*, *disease*.

(¹⁰) Æpl, æppel (II. 2.) G. *apfel*, D. *appel*.

(¹¹) For-swelgan (III. 1) to *devour*; G. *ver-schwellen*.

hwær ús hearm-stafas⁽¹⁾ where to us sorrow
 wræde⁽²⁾ on-wócon⁽³⁾, in wrath up-sprang
 and woruld-yrmðo⁽⁴⁾. and worldly misery
 Hie þá wuldres Weard Them then glory's Keeper
 wædum⁽⁵⁾ gyrede, with weeds provided,
 Scyppend ús-er, our Creator,
 hét heora sceome⁽⁶⁾ þecca bade their shame hide,
 an,
 Freá, fium-hrægle; *the* Lord, with *the* first
 garment;
 hét híe from-hweorfan bade them depart from
 neorxna-wange Paradise
 on nearore lif into a narrower life.
 Hím ou laste⁽⁷⁾ be-leác⁽⁸⁾ Behind them locked up
 lídra and wynna of comforts and joys
 hyht-fulne⁽⁹⁾ hám, *the* hopeful houne,
 hálig engel, a holy angel,
 be Freán háse, by his Lord's behest,
 fýrene⁽¹⁰⁾ sweorde. with fiery sword.
 Ne mæg þær inwit-ful⁽¹¹⁾ May not there guileful
 æníg ge-feran, any journey,

⁽¹⁾ Hesma (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*, G. *harm*. Stafas (plur. of *staf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds, as, ende-stafas *aud*, ár-stafas *honour*, &c. ⁽²⁾ Wræð II. 3.

⁽³⁾ On-wacn (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born*.

⁽⁴⁾ III. 3. from earn *poor*.

⁽⁵⁾ Wéð (III. 1.) *weed, garment*.

⁽⁶⁾ Sceamu (III. 3.) G. *schem*.

⁽⁷⁾ Last (II. 2.) *footstep*.

⁽⁸⁾ Hyht (II. 3.) *hope*.

⁽⁹⁾ Inwit (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery*.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Bs-lúcan III. 3.

⁽¹¹⁾ Fýren of *tre*.

wom-scyldig⁽¹⁾ mon ; stain-guilty man,
 ac se weard hafað but the keeper hath
 miht and strengðo⁽²⁾, might and strength,
 se þæt mære lif who that exalted life
 dûgedum⁽³⁾ deóre, to *the* good dear,
 Dryhtne healdeð. for *the* Lord holdeth.
 Nô hwæd're Æl-mihtig Not however *the* Al-
 mighty
 ealra wolde of all would
 Adam and Euan Adam and Eve
 árna⁽⁴⁾ of-teón, means deprive,
 Fæder æt Frymðe, *the* Father from *the* be-
 ginning,
 þeáh he him from- though he from them had
 withdrawn ;
 swice⁽⁵⁾ ; but he to them for solace
 ac he him tó frófre let let
 hwæd'ie ford-wesan nevertheless continue forth
 hyrstedne⁽⁶⁾ hróf⁽⁷⁾ *the* adorned roof
 hálgum tunglum⁽⁸⁾, with holy stars,
 and him grund-welan⁽⁹⁾ and them earth-riches
 ginne sealde ; ample gave ;

⁽¹⁾ Wom (II. 2) *spot, defilement.*

⁽²⁾ Strengðo (-u) (III. 3) == strengð II 3.

⁽³⁾ Dûguð (II 3) *virtue, benefit, nobility, chief men, from dugan.*

⁽⁴⁾ A'r (II 3.) *honour, wealth, &c., nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.*

⁽⁵⁾ Swican (III. 2) *to cease, depart from.*

⁽⁶⁾ Hyrst (II 3) *ornament*

⁽⁷⁾ II 2 D. roef.

⁽⁸⁾ Tungel (III. 1) *heavenly body.*

⁽⁹⁾ Wela *weat, wealth.*

béh þám sin-híwum (¹)	bade the pairs
sás and eoðan	of sea and earth
tuddor teóndra (²),	producing offspring,
teóhha (³) ge-hwylces	of every substance
tó wóuld-nytte (⁴)	to worldly use
wæstinas fédan (⁵).	fruits bring forth.
Ge-sáton þá ælter synne	<i>They occupied then after their sin</i>
sorg-fulre land,	a sorrowfuller land,
eád and édel	a dwelling and home
un-spédigran (⁶)	more barren
itemena (⁷) ge hwylcie	of every good thing
þonne se frum-stól (⁸) wæs	than the first seat was
þe híe æfter dæde	which they after <i>that</i> deed
of-a-drifén wund'on.	were driven from.

(¹) Sin-híwa mate, partner.

(²) Teón to draw, pro-duce.

(³) Teóh (tcág) II. 1. stuff, material; G. seug.

(⁴) Nyt (II. 3.) G. nutz, D. nut.

(⁵) Spédig wealthy.

(⁶) Comp. I. fet-us, &c.

(⁷) Freme (I. 3.) advantage, benefit.

(⁸) Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stoel; hence stool.

IV.—*Beowulf*(¹).

* * * The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beówulf, King of the Weder-Geáts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V (²)

Stræt(³) wæs stán-fåh,	<i>The street was variegated</i>
	<i>with stones,</i>
stíg(⁴) wísole(⁵)	<i>the path gilded</i>
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúð byrne(⁶) scán,	<i>the war-corset shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen(⁷);	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íen(⁸) scír	<i>the ring-ion bright</i>
song in se. rwum(⁹),	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
þá híe to sele(¹⁰) furðum,	<i>when they to the hall forward,</i>

(¹) From Mr Kemble's edition, the translation has been adapted to read line by line

(²) Line 637—676

(³) II. 3 L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(⁴) II. 3 G. stig, hence stigan to go, mount.

(⁵) Wian to show, direct, governing the dative; G. wissen

(⁶) Gúð II. 3 , byrne (I. 3) O. hirne.

(⁷) Clasped, closed by the hand.

(⁸) Hring (II. 2) G. ring íren (isen) (III. 1) G. eisen. The corslet was of ring or chain mail

(⁹) Searu (III. 1) equipment, chiefly for war.

(¹⁰) II. 2. L. auls, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum (1),	in their terrible harness,
gangan cwomon	proceeded to go.
Setton sáe-méðe (2)	<i>The sea-weary men set</i>
síde scyldas,	<i>their wide shields,</i>
rondas (3) regn-hearde (4),	<i>their very hard buckles,</i>
wið þæs recedes weal.	<i>by the house wall.</i>
Bugon þá tó bence,	<i>They turned then to a</i>
byrnan hringdon,	<i>bench,</i>
gúð-searo gumena ;	<i>their corslets laid in a</i>
gáras stódon	<i>ring,</i>
sáe-manna searo	<i>the war-trapping of men :</i>
samod æt-gædere,	<i>their javelins stood</i>
æsc-holt (5) úfan gæg (6) :	<i>sea-men's arms</i>
wæs se fíen-breát	<i>all together,</i>
wæpnum ge-wurðad	<i>ash-wood above gray :</i>
þá þær wlone hæleð (7)	<i>the iron-crowd was</i>
oret-mecgus (8)	<i>by the weapons honoured.</i>
æfter hæleðum fíægn :	<i>Then there a proud war-</i>
Hwanon feigead ge	<i>rior</i>
	<i>the sons of battle</i>
	<i>after the heroes asked :</i>
	<i>Whence bear ye</i>

(1) Grýre (II. 2.) *hátror*, comp. G. es grauet, O. it grewa. Geatwe
(ge tawe) (I. 3) == searu.

(2) G. mude.

(3) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(4) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(5) Æso (II. 3) G. esche, holt (II. 1.) *holt*, G. holz, D. hout

(6) G. grau

(7) II. 2. G. held.

(8) Mecg (mæg) *kins-man*, *son*, *man*, connected with mæg, and mæga, and all with Mac-.

fætte scyldas,	<i>your</i> thick shields,
græge syrcan ⁽¹⁾ ,	gray shirts,
and grim-helmas ⁽²⁾ ,	and visor-helms,
here-sceafta ⁽³⁾ heáp?	<i>your</i> war-shafts' heap?
Ic eom Hróð-gáres	I am Hróthgár's
ar and om-biht ⁽⁴⁾ :	messenger and servant:
ne seáh ic el-þeódige	never saw I foreign
þus manige men	thus many men
módig-lícran	haughtier:
wén ⁽⁵⁾ is þæt ge for	I ween that ye for pride,
wlenco ⁽⁶⁾ ,	
nalles for wíaec-sídum ⁽⁷⁾	not for exile
ac for hyge-þrymmum ⁽⁸⁾ ,	but for magnanimity,
Hróð-gár sóhton.	have sought Hróthgár.

Part of Canto XXII.⁽⁹⁾

Beó-wulf madelode ⁽¹⁰⁾ ,	Beówulf harangued,
bearn Ecg-þeowes:	son of Ecgtheow:
Ge-þenc nū se mæra	Consider now thou the
maga Healf-denes,	famous
	son of Healfdene,

⁽¹⁾ Syree (I. 3) S. sark; gray shirts of iron chain-mail

⁽²⁾ Grime (II. 2.) mask, part of the helmet covering the face.

⁽³⁾ Sceaft (II. 2.) G. schaft.

⁽⁴⁾ Om-(am-) bihtu office, G. amt.

⁽⁵⁾ (II. 3.) hops, expectation wén is there is reason to suppose.

⁽⁶⁾ Wlenco (III. 3.) from wlanc proud.

⁽⁷⁾ Wræc (II. 3.) exile, &c., síð journey.

⁽⁸⁾ Hyge (II. 2.) mind, hyegan (hogian) to think, þrym (II. 2.) glory.

⁽⁹⁾ Lane 2945—2998.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Meðel (II. 1.) discourse, speech.

snottra (¹) fengel,	prudent chief,
nú ic eom síðes fús,	now I am ready to de- part,
gold-wine (²) gumena,	patron of men,
hwæt wit geów spira.co.;	what we two erst spake;
git ic æt þ-arse	if I at thy need
þinie sceolde	should
aldre linnan,	from life cause,
þæt þú me á wære	that thou to me ever wouldst be
ford-ge-witenum,	departed,
on fæder stæle (³).	in a father's stead.
Wæs þú mund-bora (⁴)	Be thou a protector
mínum mago þegnum,	to my kindred thanes,
hond-ge-sellum (⁵),	my near comrades,
gif mec hild nime.	if we battle should take.
Swylce þú ja máðmas (⁶)	Likewise do thou the treasures
þe þú me sealdest,	that thou gavest me,
Hróð-gár leófa,	Hróthgár dear,
Hige-láce on-send:	to Higelac send:

(¹) *Snotra* *prudent*, definite form, *se* being understood.

(²) *Gold-* implies *splendour*, *munificence*, *wine* (II 2.) *friend* forms part of many proper names *Trum-wine*, *Kad-wine*, *Edwin*, &c.

(³) *Stæl* (II 2.) hence *stall*, G. *stelle*

(⁴) *Mund* (II 3.) *protection*, forming part of several proper names, as *O's-mund*, *Sigemund* (G. *Siegmund*) *Sigismund*, &c. *bora* (from *beran*) *one who bears*, the second part of several compounds.

(⁵) Lit. *hand comrades*, *ge-sel* (II 2.) G. *ge-selle*.

(⁶) *Máðsum*, *máðm* *mfidm treasure, gift*.

mæg þonne on þam golde may then by the gold
on-gitan understand

Geáta dryhten, the lord of the Geáts,
ge-seón sunu Hredles Hrethl's son see

þonne he on þæt sinc when he at the treasure
starad, stareth,

þæt ic gum-cystum⁽¹⁾ that I in *his* munificence
gódne funde found *a* good
beága⁽²⁾ bryttan; distributor of rings;
breác þonne móste. *I enjoyed it while I*
might.

And þú Hun-feidt læt And do thou let Hun-
ealde láfe⁽³⁾, feidh

wræt-líc⁽⁴⁾ wæg-sweoid⁽⁵⁾, the old bequest,
the ornamented wave-
sword,

wíd-cúdne man, the wide-known man,
heard-ecg⁽⁶⁾ habban. the hard edged have.

Ic me mid Hruntinge⁽⁷⁾ I me with Hrunting
dóm ge-wyrce, glory will work,
oððe mec deád nimed. or me death shall take.

Æfter þáem wordum After those words

(1) Cyst (II 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing*, from ceósan.

(2) Beáh (II. 2.) *ring*, F. *bague* from beógen, búgn̄ *to bow, bend*. Rings whether for the arm (*earni-beah*), or neck (*heals-beah*), were usual gifts from an I. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

(3) Láf (II 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom*, as swords often were.

(4) Wræt *embossed or carved ornament*.

(5) Wæg (II 3.) *wave*, G. *voge*, F. *vague* *adorned with wavy lines as blades still are.*

(6) Ecg (II 3.) *edge*, G. *ecke*

(7) Hrunting was the name of Beowulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geāta leōd *the Weder-Geāts' prince*
 ēfste mid elne⁽¹⁾, hastened with boldness,
 nā-fæs and-sware nor answer
 bidañ wolde: would bide:
 brim-wylm on-feng *the ocean-tide received*
 hilde-rince⁽²⁾. *the man of war.*

Part of Canto XXVII. (3)

Cwom⁽⁴⁾ þá tó flóde Caine then to *the flood*
 fela módigra many proud
 hæg-stealdia⁽⁵⁾, bachelors,
 hūng net⁽⁶⁾ báron, *who* ring-nets bore,
 locene leoðo-syrean⁽⁸⁾. locked limb-shirts.
 Land-weard on-fand *The land-guard found out*
 eft-síð eorla, *the return of the warriors,*
 swá he ær dyde, as he ere had done;
 nō he mid hearme not with insult did he
 of hlides⁽⁸⁾ nosan⁽⁹⁾ from *the cape's point*
 gæstas ne grétté, *the guests greet,*
 ac him tó-geanes rád; but to meet them rode,

(1) *Ellen* (II. 1.) *courage, valour.*(2) *Rinc* (II. 2.) *man, warrior.*

(3) Line 3772—3835.

(4) *Fela* usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.(5) *Hæg-steald* (II. 2.) *G. hage-stolz*, the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past, and “*hæg-steald mon*” occurs.

(6) Another allusion to the rings of their mail.

(7) *Lid, leoð* (III. 1.) *G. glied, D. lid.*(8) *Hlids* (II. 1.) *lid, covering, cliff.*(9) *Nose* I. 3.

cwæd pæt wil-cuman
Wedera leódum,

scalcas⁽¹⁾ on scír-hame⁽²⁾
tó scipe fóron.
þá wæs on sande
sæ-geáp naca⁽³⁾
hladen here-wædum,
hringed stefna⁽⁴⁾,
mærum and māðmum ;
mæst hlifade
ofer Hróð-gáres
hord-ge-streónum⁽⁵⁾ .
he þám bát-wearde⁽⁶⁾
bunden golde
swurd ge-sealde,
þæt he síð-þán wæs
on meodu-bence⁽⁷⁾
máðma þý weordre,
yfse-láfe.
Ge-wát him on nacan

quoth that welcome
to the people of the Wed-
ers,
men in bright mail
to their ship went.
There was on the sand
the sea-curved bark
laden with war-weeds,
the ringed vessel,
with horses and gifts ;
the mast lifted itself
over Hróðgár's
hoarded treasures :
he to the boat-ward
bound with gold
a sword gave,
so that he afterwards was
on the mead-bench
for the gifts the worthier,
the heir-loom.
He departed in the ship

⁽¹⁾ Scale, scale man, servant &c, G. schalk, tongue Mearh-scale office &c. having the care of the horses (mearh horse), hence mar-shal.

⁽²⁾ Ham (*hamma*) covering, here *armour*.

(3) Comp G nachen, F nacelle

⁽⁴⁾ Stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) stem plow, stefna ship having a stem ship with the stem adorned with rings.

⁽⁵⁾ Hord (II 2) hoard, treasure, ge-streón (II 3) acquisition, wealth &c., streónan, strynan to acquire, get, beget, hence strain, breed.

(*) Bát (II 1) G. boot.

(7) Meodo, medo (-u) (III 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter;	to urge <i>the</i> deep water;
Dena land of-geaf:	the Danes' land <i>he</i> left:
pá wæs be mæste	there was by <i>the</i> mast
mere-hrægla sum,	a certain sea-vest,
segл(¹) sále-fæst(²);	a sail fast by <i>a</i> rope;
sund-wudu(³) þunede(⁴);	the sea-wood thū idered;
nó þær wág flotan(⁵)	not there <i>the</i> wave-floater did
wind ofer ýðum	<i>the</i> wind over <i>the</i> billows
sídes ge-tw.éfile(⁶);	from <i>its</i> course hinder;
sæ-genga fór,	<i>the</i> sea goer went,
fleát fúnig heals(⁷)	floated <i>the</i> foamy-necked
soið ofer ýðe,	forth over <i>the</i> wave,
bundlen(⁸) stefua	<i>the</i> bounden ship
ofer brim-streámas,	over <i>the</i> ocean-streams,
þæt híe Geáta clifu(⁹)	so that they <i>the</i> Geats' cliffs
ou-gitan meahton,	could make out,
cúðe næssas(¹⁰).	<i>the</i> known headlands.

(¹) Segel (II. 2.) G. segel.

(²) Sál (II. 2.) *string*, &c. G. *seil*, hence *sélan* below to *bind, make fast*.

(³) From sund, comes sound (*strait*) G. *sund*

(⁴) Þuman; comp. L. *tonare*, þunor (II. 2.) *thunder*, L. *tonitru*, G. *donner*, D. *donder*. Hence þór *Thor*, the *thunderer*, (Jupiter) *Tonans*.

(⁵) Flota *floater, ship, sailor*, from fleótan (III. 3.) to *float, fleet*, F. *flotter*. (⁶) Ge-tw.éfau to *divide, &c.*; from twá.

(⁷) Heals (II. 2.) *neck*, G. *hals*.

(⁸) With ornaments *bound or wound round the prow*.

(⁹) Clif (III. 1.) *rock, cliff*, L. *clivus*, G. *klippe*, D. *khp*.

(¹⁰) Næs *nose, promontory*; L. *nasus*, G. *nase*. hence *-ness* in Duage-
ness and the like.

Ceól⁽¹⁾ úp-ge-sprang
lyft-ge-swenced⁽²⁾,
on lande stód.
Hraðe wæs æt holme
hýð-weard⁽³⁾ geara,
se-þe ær lange tíd
leófra manua,
fús æt faroðe,
tær wlátode :
sælde tó sande
síð-fæðme⁽⁴⁾ scip
oncer-bendum⁽⁵⁾ fæst,
þý-læs hine ýð-þrym,
wudu wynsuman,
for-wreca⁽⁶⁾ meahte.

*The ship up-sprang
air-compelled,
on the land stood.
Quickly was at the sea
the shore-guard ready,
who long time ere
the dear men's,
ready at the strand,
journey had watched :
he tied to the sand
the wide-bosomed ship
with anchor-bands fast,
lest it the force of the
waves,
the winsome wood,
might damage.*

(¹) Ceól (II. 2) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *læl* vessels called *keels* are still in use on the Humber.

(²) Lyft (II. 3.) G. *luft*, O. *lift*, *swencan to dīne, urge*

(³) Hyð (II. 3) *haven, &c.*; hence *hythe* in Queen-huthe, &c.

(⁴) Fæðm II. 2.

(⁵) Oncer, ancor (II. 2) G. *aukz*.

(⁶) For-wreca (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c.* hence to *wreck*.

APPENDIX.

 1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*

*** This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

Ac (ah) but.

ác (II 3) *oak*; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go.*

ágau (anom.) *to own, possess, have.*

a-gen (¹) (a-(on-)gean) *a-gain, a-gaunst*: G. gegen. D. te-gen.

ágen *own*; G. and D. eigen.

an (on) *on, in*; én, L. ín, G. an, D. aan (²)

an (ann) (*I*) *grant* from unnan.

(¹) P. *agen* or *agm.*

(²) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel, on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, 'u G a diphthong, a vowel with h before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A S long vowel.

- án *one, a*; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, *eīc*⁽¹⁾.
- ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.
- ár (II. 3.) *honour*; G. ehre, D. eer.
- aras; plur. of ar.
- a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.
- ædre *instantly, forthwith*.
- ádre (I. 3.) *vein*; G. and D. ader.
- æl (II. 2.) *awl*; G. ahl, D. els.
- æl (II. 2.) *eel*; G. and D. aal.
- ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict*; G. bann, D. **ban**.
- bán (II. 1.) *bone*; G. hein, D. been.
- bær (II.) *bare*; G. bar
- bær (I) *bare*; G. (ge-)bar.
- bær (II. 3.) *bier*; G. bahre, D. baar.
- ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.
- bén (II. 3.) *prayer*.
- blæd (II. 2.) *fruit*; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blaðr.*)
- blæd (II. 3.) *blast*; G. blasen.
- brid (bridd) (II. 2.) *(young) bird*.
- bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride*; G. braut, D. brijd.
- bude; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.
- búde; imperf. of búan *to cultivate, &c.* G. baute
- cneow (III. 1.) *knee*; G. and D. knie.
- cneów (I) *knew*
- coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.
- cóe (II. 2.) *cock*.
- feol⁽²⁾ (feoll) (I) *fell*; G. fiel.

(¹) Here and often else, the *v* has evidently been dropped before *ə*; it appears in the neut. *év*, and in the oblique cases *évoç*, &c. See Additions, &c.

(²) Quantity doubtful; if long, both words should be shifter' TL below.

feól (fýl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl (¹)

floc (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

floc (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok

flóc (II. 3.) *flat-fish, (flat-fish, of an anchor.)*

foi- (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

for *fur*; G. fur, D. voor.

fór (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

fór: imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

foíe *be-for*; G. vor, D. voor, I. pro, προ.

fóie, 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

ful (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

ful (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

fúl *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

fyl (fyll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

fyl (fyll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fulle.

fýl (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

fyr *further.*

fýr (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: πῦρ.

geat (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

geát, imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. goot.

geoc (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. júguim, ζύγον.

geóc (II. 3.) *consolation.*

geong *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

geóng; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

God (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

góð *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

heaf (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en *hav-en*,

F. hav-re.

heáf (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(¹) D. v is = f.

ham *ham*; D. ham.

ham (*hama*) (II. 2.) *cowering, skin.*

hám⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *home, duelling; G. heim, D. heem.*

hama (*homa, ham*); see above.

háma *grasshopper.*

hig (II. 1.) *hay; G. heu.*

hig *hey! oh!*

híg (*hí*) *they: oi, I., ei, ii.*

hof (II. 2.) *cont, duelling; G. and D. hof.*

hóf (I) *hore; G. hub, D. hief.*

hwæte *eager, brave.*

hwæté (II. 2.) *whent; G. weizen, D. weit.*

hyrde (II. 2.) *herd; G. hirt.*

hýrde (I) *heand; G. hoite.*

hyre (*hire*) *her; G. ihr.*

hýre (*heore*) *gentle, mild; G. (un-ge-)heuer.*

is *is*, G. ist, D. is: *ɛɔri*, L. est.

is (II. 1.) *ice; G. eis, D. ijs.*

lam *lame; G. lahm, D. lam.*

lám (II. 2.) *loam, G. lehm, D. leem.*

leoð (*lið*) (III. 1.) *limb; G. glied, D. lid.*

leóð (II. 1.) *lay, song; G. and D. lied.*

lim (III. 1.) *limb.*

kím (II. 2.) *lime, s-lime⁽²⁾; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.*

man (*mann*) (III. 2.) *man; G. maan, D. man.*

mán (II. 1.) *sin, crime, comp. G. mein-eid, D. mijnd-eed
perjury, and our man-sworn.*

⁽¹⁾ Hence *ham-let*, and *ham (hamp-)* in local names, comp. G. *Blindheim*, D. *Gorino-hem* &c.

⁽²⁾ See p. 105, n. 9.

mæst (II. 2.) *mast*; (‡) *mast*.

mæst *most*; G. *meist*, D. *meest*.

men (menn) *men*; G. *manner*.

mén *necklace*, &c. L. *mon-ile*.

metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure*; G. *messen*, D. *meetnen*

metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.

métan (I. 2.) *to meet*; D. *moeten*.

ne *not*, O. *ne*; L. and F. *ne*.

nú (for ne-ge) *nor*; L. *nec*, G. *noch*, F. *ni*.

nið (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.

níð (II. 2.) *envy, malice*; G. *neid*.

sæd *sated*, hence *sad*; G. *satt*: comp. L. *săt-is* *enough*.

sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said*; G. *ge-sagt*.

sæd (II. 1.) *seed*; G. *saat*, D. *zaad*⁽¹⁾.

sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hull*, G. *saal*, F. *salle*: *aὐλη*.

sæl (II. 2.) *time*.

sæl (sél) *good, excellent*.

spræc (I) *spake*; G. *sprach*, D. *sprak*.

spræc (II. 3.) *speech*; G. *spiache*, D. *spraak*.

syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin*, G. *sünde*, D. *zonde*.

sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.

sýn (sín) *his, &c.*; G. *sein*, D. *zijn*.

to- (prefix) G. *zer-*⁽²⁾.

tó *to*; G. *zu*, D. *te*, *toe*, *tot*.

tó *too*; G. *zu*, D. *te*.

tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll*; G. *zoll*, D. *tol*.

tól (II. 1.) *tool*.

uton *let us—*; L. *utin-am?*

⁽¹⁾ D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

⁽²⁾ G. z (= ts) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.

úton *without*; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.

wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance*; G. wage, D. waag.

wæg (II. 2.) *wave*; G. woge, F. vague.

wende (I) *turned, went*; G. wandte, D. wende.

wénde (I) *weened*; G. wähnte, D. waande.

wérig *spiteful*.

wérig *weary*.

westan *from the west*.

wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage*; G. ver-wüsten.

win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain*; G. ge-winn.

win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. wonne.

win (II. 1.) *wine*; G. wein, D. wijn: oīv-oç, L. vīn-um.

þa *the &c.*; G. die, D. de: rā.

þá *then, when*; G. da.

þara (þar, þær) *there*, G. dar.

þára (þára) *of the &c.*; G. der.

II.—*Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.*

Aldor (ealdor)⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *chief, prince*; hence alder-man.

al dor (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.

ær (II. 1.) *brass*; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.

ær ere; G. eher, D. eer.

æt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.

æt (I) *ate*; G. ass, D. at

æt at; L. ad.

(1) The A. S. has a tendency to insert e (y) before a · hence the frequent modern pronunciation of kyart for cart and the like.

- bát (II. 1.) *boat*; G. boot.
- bát (I) *bit*; G. biss, D. beet.
- beáh (II. 2.) *ring*; F. bague.
- beál; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend*; G. bieg, D. boog.
- beó (I. 3.) *bee*, G. biene, D. bij.
- beó (I) *be*; G. bin, D. ben.
- beón *bees*.
- beón *to be*.
- here (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.
- bere (I) *bear*.
- bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion*; G. beil, D. bijl.
- bil *bill, beak*.
- blác *pale, bleah*, hence *black*, G. bleich, D. bleek.
- blác; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink*; G. blinken.
- bóc (III. 3.) *book*; G. buch, D. boek.
- bóc; imperf. of bacan *to bake*, D. biek.
- byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.
- byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.
- byrne (I. 3.) *corslet, O. birnie*.
- byrne (birne) (I) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.
- cín (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.
- cín (eyvn) (II. 1.) *km, race*.
- :yst (eist) (II. 3.) *chest*; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.
- cyst (II. 3.) *choice*; D. keus.
- cyst, 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss*; G. kusst.
- deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer*; G. thier, D. dier.
- deór (dýr) *dear*, G. theuer, D. duur.
- ealdor, see aldon above.
- earn (II. 2.) *arm*; G. arm, L. arm-us.
- earn *poor*; G. arm.

éce (II. 2) *ache.*

éce *eternal*

fah *hostile; hence foe.*

fah *variegated, stained, discoloured!*

fær (II. 2.) *stratagem.*

fær (II. 3) *carriage, going; hence fare.*

fæsten (III. 1.) *fastness; G. feste.*

fæsten (II. 1.) *fast; G. fasten.*

fæt (III. 1) *vat, fat; L. vas, G. fass, D. vat.*

fæt *fat; G. fett D. vet.*

from (fromin) *bold, pious; G. fromm.*

from (fram) *from.*

fyllan (II. 2) *to fill; G. fullen, D. vullen.*

fyllan (II. 2.) *to sell; G. fallen, D. vellen.*

fyrst (first) (II. 3) *period, space of time; G. frist.*

fyrst (fyrnest) *first, chief, G. furst.*

ge ye; D. gj.

ge both *g.c.*

gif if, O. gif; G. ob.

gif *give; G. gieb.*

git (gyt, get, iet) *yet.*

git (g.t) *ye tuo.*

healt *halt, lame.*

healt (hylt, healdeð) *holdeth.*

hran (hrón) (II. 2.) *whale.*

hrán; imperf. of hrínan *to touch.*

hund (II. 2) *hound, dog; G. hund, D. ho l.*

hund (II. 1.) *hundred &c.; D. hond.*

hylt (hilt) (II. 1.) *hilt.*

hylt = healt, healdeð; (see above) G. Lält.

hyrst⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *forest*.

hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.

in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*

in (on) *in*; *in*, G. and L. *in*.

leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub, D. loof.

leáf (II. 2.) *leave*; G. ur-laub, D. ver-lof⁽²⁾.

leán (II. 1.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.

leás *false, loose*; G. loos, L. lax-us.

leás; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.

list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure*; G. lust.

list (II. 3.) *craft*; G. list.

lid (leoð) (III. 1.) *limb*; G. gled, D. lid.

lid *fleet, navy*.

lid (licged) (*he*) *lieth*; G. liegt.

mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man*; D. maag.

mæg (I) *may*; G. and D. mag.

mægd (II. 3.) *maid*; G. magd, maid, D. meid.

mægd (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.

mæl (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl (III. 1.) *spot*; G. mahl, D. maal

mál *picture, image*.

mænan (I. 2.) *to mean*; G. meinen, D. meenen.

mænan (I. 2.) *to moan*.

mearh (mear)⁽³⁾ (II. 2.) *horse*.

mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow*; G. mark, D. niorg.

⁽¹⁾ Hence *Hurst*, Lynd *hurst* &c., comp. G. Delmen-horst &c.

⁽²⁾ Hence *fur-lough*, or there may have been an A. S. for-leáf

⁽³⁾ There are traces of the E. masc. *mare* in local names and old sayings; night-*mare* and G. nacht-mahr are properly masc. answering to L. *incubus*, incubo; G. mahre *mare*, answers to A. S. myre, D. mette.

mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting.*

mót (I.) *must, may*; G. muss, D. moet.

næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland*; G. *nase*, D. *neus*, L. *nas-us*.

næs (ne wæs) *was not.*

næs (nas) *not.*

| neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox.*

neát; imperf. of neótan *to use.*

nest (II. 1.) *nest*; G. *nest*.

nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision.*

of er (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank*; G. ufer, D. oefer.

of er over; ú̄ter, L. super, G. über, D. over.

odðe or, O. *other*; G. oder, L. aut.

odðe (for odð-pæt) *until.*

rædan (I. 2.) *to read, guess*; G. er-rathen, D. raaden

rædan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise*; G. rathen, D. raaden.

ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire*; G. reich, D. rijk.

ríce *pouerful, rich*; G. reich, D. rijk

sæc (II. 2.) *sack*; σακκος, L. saccus, G. sack, D. zak.

sæc (II. 3.) *war, battle.*

sæl (II. 2.) *time, occasion.*

sæl (sél) *good.*

sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear*; G. schaft.

sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation.*

scír (II. 3.) *shire, division.*

scír *bright, clear, sheer*; G. schier

scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield*; G. schild.

scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.*; G. schuld.

segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign*; L. signum.

segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying*; G. sage.

seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne.*

seld (seldan) *seldom*, G. selten, D. zelden

seó si,ht, *pupil of the eye.*

seó the, uho; G. sic, D. zij: ȝi, L. ea

side (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

side (I. 3.) *silh:* G. seide, D. zijde.

side *widely.*

síð (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síð *late.*

síð since, O. sith; G. seit.

slege (slecge) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer).*

slege (III. 1.) *slaying.*

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (I) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stemn) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stünme, D. stem.

stician to stick, stab; G. stec ien } D. steeken.
stician to stick, cleave; G. stecken }

treówe⁽¹⁾ (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

treówe (trýwe, treowd) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G. treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-taunum.

tyn (tyne)⁽²⁾ *ten*; G. zehn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

⁽¹⁾ Treówe (adj.) and treówe or treowd (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true, truth*, L. verus, veritas, G. wahr, wahrheit, D. waar, waarheid, these are in A S sóð and sóð-fæstniss sóð fæst (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity*—“honest and true.” It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed “that which one knoweth.”

⁽²⁾ Tyne seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

wan (wann) (I) *oon*; G. ge-wann.

weal⁽¹⁾ (wealth, wala) (II. 2.) *Gael, Celt, stranger, one not of Gothic race*.

weal (weall) (II. 2.) *wall*; G. wall.

weard (II. 2.) *ward-en, guard-ian, keeper*.

weard (II. 3.) *ward, guard, keeping*.

wel (well, wll) (II. 3.) *welt, spring*; G. quelle, D. wel.

wel *well*; G. wohl, D. wel.

weorðe (wyrde) *worth, worthy*; G. werth, würdig.

weorðe (wuide) from weordan, G. werde, D. worde.

wit (ge-witt) III. 1. *wit, sense*; G. witz.

wit (wyt) *ue two*.

wítan (anom.) *to know*; O. wit, wis, wot; G. wissen, D. weeten.

wítan⁽²⁾ *to punish, blame*; O. wite, D. wijten.

wód *wood, wood*.

wód *imperf. of wadan to go, wade*; I. vadere.

wráð (II. 3.) *wreath*.

wráð *wroth*.

wyllan (welan, weallan) (II. 2.) *to boil*; G. wallen.

wyllan (willan) *to will*; G. wollen, L. velle.

þanc (II. 2.) *thank*; G. dank.

þanc (ge-þanc) (II. 2.) *thought*; G. ge-danke, D. ge-dachte.

þe *that, which*.

þe *or*.

þe *than*.

(1) Hence *Wal-es*, Corn-wall, *Wall-on*, *wal-nut* (P. *welsh-nut*) G. *wall-nuss* (*walche-nuss*) *wall-fahrt* *foreign journey, pilgrimage &c.* See p 118. n. 3.

(2) From *æt-wítan*, *ed-wítan* comes *t-wit*.

þe *thee*; Dor. *τε*, L. *te*, G. *dich*.

þeáh *though*; G. *doch*.

þeáh (þáh) imperf. of þeón *to thive*; G. *ge-dieg*.

III.—*Other words likely to be confounded by learners.*

Æl- for eal; as æl-mihtig *almighty*.

æl- (el-); as, æl-þeodig *foreign*.

beran (II. I.) *to bear*.

berian (¹) *to bare*.

birnan (²) (byrnán) (III. I.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. brennen

bærnan (bernan) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act.) G. brennen.

búgan (beógan) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. biegen,
D. buigen

bígan (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

búgian (= búan) *to inhabit &c.*

cleófan (clúfan) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split*; G. klieben, D.
klieven, klooven.

clifian *to cleave, stick*; G. kleben, D. kleeven.

cunnan (anom.) *to know, be able*.

cuonian *to try, tempt, attempt*.

(¹) The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

(²) Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2., the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former, as, birne, barn; bærnan, and the like. the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Full* for *jell*, *lay* for *he*, *set* for *sit* are as wrong as *drink* for *drienc*, or *drench* for *drink* would be. Comp. L. *pendere to lāng*, (neut.) *pendere to hang* (act.) &c.

cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.

cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. *quälen* *to vex &c.*

denn (II. 1.) *den*.

denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.

drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. *trinken*, D. *drinken*.

drencian (I. 2.) *to drench, drown* (act.); G. *tranken*, D. *drenken*.

a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown* (neut.); G. *er-trinken*, D. *ver-drinken*

faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. *fahren*, D. *vaaren*.

feran (I. 2.) }

ferian *to convey, carry*, also *go*; G. *fahren*, D. *voeren*

feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. *fallen*, D. *vallen*

fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. *fallen*, D. *vellen*.

fleógan (*fleón*) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.

flígan (*a-flígan*) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.

fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. *ver-faulen*

fullian *to baptise*.

gréatau (*greótan*) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. *krijten*.

grétan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. *grussen*, D. *groeten*

hangian *to hang* (neut.); G. *hangen*.

hangan (*hón*) (II. 2.) *to hang* (act.); G. *hangen*.

hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. *heissen*, D. *heeten*.

hatian *to hate*; G. *hassen*, D. *haaten*.

hæbban (*habban*) *to have*; G. *haben*, D. *habben*.

hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. *heben*, D. *heffen*.

heort (*hvorot*) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. *hirsch*, D. *hert*.

heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. *herz*, D. *hart*.

hlast (*last*) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.

hlæst (II. 1.) *lust, load*; G. *last*.

hnigan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. nijgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnægan (I. 2.) *to make stoop*.

hrím *rime, frost*.

rím (II. 2.) *rike, number*; G. rīm, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hooren.

hýrian *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuen.

herian *to praise*

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two*.

inca (¹) *ill-will*

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*: G. rinnen, D. rennen.

aernan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run*.

lág (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3.) *water*, comp. L. läc-us, G. lache *lake &c.*

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

lán (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb*.

leóma *light*; L. lūm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish*.

lysian (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-release, re-deem*; G. er-losen.

letan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder*.

lætan (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laten.

liccian *to lick*; λεψειν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lekken.

lician *to please, like*.

liegan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

leegan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. leggen.

(¹) The declension of nouns in a here, and in the later notes to the Extracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

be-lifan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-ljiven.

læfan (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain*.

a lýtan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to allow*; G. er-lauben, F. al-louer.

ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to be-leave*; G. g-lauben, D. ge looven.

lídan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage*.

lædan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go*; G. leiten, D. leiden.

loc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)*; D. lok.

loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up*.

locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening*; also *locker &c.*

lutian *to lurk*; L. lät-ere.

lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow*.

mád (II. 1.) *math, mead*; G. mahd, matte.

méd (II. 3.) *meed, reward*.

medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead*; G. meth, D. meede.

mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man*.

mæg (II. 2. plur. mægas) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.

maga (plur. magan) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.

mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman*.

metan } See I. above.

métan }

mætan (I. 2.) *to paint*.

múð (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)*, G. mund, D. mond.

múða *mouth (of a river)*; G. mundung.

a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise*; D. rijzen.

a-ráran (I. 2.) *to rear*.

sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. sahēn, D. zaaijen.

seówian (sýwian) *to sew*.

- síncan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. sinken.
 sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.
 sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitten.
 settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetten.
 sígan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down.*
 ságan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue.*
 springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.
 spriengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. (¹)
 swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep.*
 swebban *to put to sleep.*
 swefnian *to dream.*
 swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.
 swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress.*
 swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.
 swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. ver-schwenden.
 treów (III. 1.) *tree.*
 treówe (trýwe) *true, truth*; see II. above.
 wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G. wachen, D. waaken.
 weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.
 weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.
 wéder (II. 2.) *wether*; G. widder.
 wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling*; oik-oç: see p. 103, n. 12.
 wieg (II. 1.) *horse.*
 wíg (II. 2.) *war.*
 windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.
 wendan (I. 2.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D. wenden

(¹) *To spring (a mine), blow up or open.*

wíse (I. 3.) *wise, manner*, G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

wísa *wise man, guide*; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

wítan (anom.) *to know &c.*: see I. above.

ge-wítan *to depart*.

witian *to decide*.

wíte (III. 1.) *punishment*; O. *wite*.

wita *counsellor*, hence *witena ge-mót parliament*.

wræd̄ *wrath, anger*.

wrád̄ *wroth, angry*

þíncan (I. 3.) *to seem*; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

þencan (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self*; G. and D. *denken*.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Comp. δοκεω *I think, seem*, δοκει μαι *me-thinks*.

IV.—*Additional Notes.*

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagnum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : é answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote i without a dot, y with one

p probably gave rise to the O abbreviations ye for the (þe), yt for that (þt), &c.

Page 2 — x was also written for oððe or, oððx for oðð-lice truly, verily. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þám to the &c., þñ for þonne then, when.

In later times z occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y. hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalzell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wíid, good, gees, for wíd, góð, geð, like D. wijl &c., in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects, as, (sleaham) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan, gangan, lán, G. gehen, D. gaan, hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1) while it remains in kindred tongues; ís, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. ansts, gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) Goth. nna, sáft, G. sanct, fús (*prompt*), Goth. funs, ús, Gnth and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided, as, δοῦς, δῶσα (L. dans), στραγ, στᾶσα (L. stans), Σιμοεῖς, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the v appears as soon as the s is removed: neut. δούν, στάν; gen. δούντος, στάντος, Σιμοεντος &c. In A. S. l, y, ó, and ú before ð,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by nd, nt, or nth, in the other languages, as, líðe, (*lithr, soft*) G. linde, sifð (*time*) Goth. suntha, Dan. sunde, swið, Goth. swinths, hrýðer, G. rind, D. rund; ýð, L. unda, óðer, Goth. anthars, G. ander; teóðe (*tenth*), G. zehnte, eúð, G. kund, gúð (*war*). Goth. gunths, O. G. kund

In the imperfects stöd, biðhte, þuhete, þóhte, n is likewise dropped, and the vowel made long, g or c in the three last becoming h, as often else, cunnan and unnan also make eúðe, úðe instead of cunde (G. konnte), unne. bohte *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L., as, fundo, fúdu, fúsus, tundo, túsus, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

Page 4.—Sometimes too g is added before e, as geów for eów, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41), with a soft vowel before or after it, g seems to have been but lightly sounded, as y, or as a fine guttural.

Page 5.—Other changes are iø for eo, and iø for ed, sefon, siøfon, heð, hið - u for o, and ú for 6, especially after g/e, which sometimes becomes i, geong, (giung) iung, geú, (giú) iú, iø, Iótas, Iútas Jutes ie for y, gyld, gield *payment, tax &c.* U occurs medievally for v in foreign names, as David *David*, hence also for f, as luian for lufian *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

Page 8.—A. S. d has sometimes become E. th (soft), often G. t; fæder *father*, G. vater. Þ and ð usually answer to G. and D. d; þeo, G. drei, D. drie, bróðer, G. bruder, D. broeder, ð sometimes to G. and D. t, forð, G. fort, D. voort. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination *th* for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ð at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German:

Neut	clif	G. klippe (f.)	cliff, rock.
—	lfc	G. leiche (f.)	corpse.
—	sád	G. saat (f.)	seed.
—	eeorp	G. scharpe (f.)	scarf.
—	bíg-spel	G. bei-spiel (m.)	example.
—	toll	G. zoll (m.)	toll.
Masc	næs	G. nsse (f.)	nose, ness.
—	sál	G. sei1 (n.)	cord.
—	tear	G. zahre (f.)	tear.
—	an-(ge-)weald	G. ge-walt (f.)	power
Fem	blæd	G. blatt (n.)	fruit, leaf.
—	nyt	G. nutz (m.)	use.

L. has clivus masc. and clivum neut.; nasus is masc

Page 9.—Swefen *dream* is fem. II. 3, and neut. III. 1.

Sceó *shoe* (G. schuh masc.) is masc. II 2 (plur. sceó̄s), or fem I. 3. (plur. sceón O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scy.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more setl *seat*, and wered *host* are masc., -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem.; as, geógoð(-uð) *youth*, from geong -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, strengð from *strang*; otherwise sometimes neut as, morð *murder*, or masc. as monð (*monað*) *month*.

Compounds in -læc are neut, in -ræclen feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in -σι, and the L. in -bus, the latter to the Gr. which form it in -οις or -αις, and the L. in -is. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater seeming propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only -n, and in the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon, thus, simple οὐς, αὐτ-ις, εἴρ-ε, δ-νομ-α, nom-en, n a m-a; hom-o, g u m-a, complex: ἐπ-ον, ωρε, πυργ-ος, burh; via, weg, vlr, wer. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning, as, heofon, heofone heaven, mann, manna man, þeów, þeówa slave, some with, as, mūð month (animate), mūða mouth (inanimate), see List III above, lufa and lufe are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for love, affection (amor), the latter for love, sake (gratia) Godes lufu love of God; for suines góðes lufan for the sake of some good

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next in some words derived from the accus., and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, us being in neutrals and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c. in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, twá, bá, and þeo are noticeable exceptions.

Page 19.—The plural ending -an (G. -en) became in time -en which in ox-en (ox-an) is yet rightly used, hos-en (hōs-a), and P. hous-en (hús), and furz-en (fyrz-as) are wrong. To brethr-en (bróðr-u),

and *childr-en* (*childr-u*) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *childer* still in P. use see p 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. *kuch-en*) whence *chuck* i shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vix-en*, see p 66

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined, as *Goti Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna* *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*, dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europe*). *Donua Danube* (G. *Danu*, well called by Milton *Danaw*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a, all nouns in -i being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in u, (II 3 or III. 3), as, *Mæd hild*, *Ead gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgwa*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative, as, II e ge-srah *Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli*: from *Decapolis* *Iacobus Zebedei James (im) of Zebede Lazarus* g i ut' *Lazarus came forth*! Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II 2, as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*, *Petrus*, *Petrie*, and the like

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *heizens*, *nim-eur*, *wilens* *lieb-ens* (*wurdig*), are derived from the Goth. gen. *huit-ans*, *nam-ans* (L. *nominis*) *wily-ans* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaubens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga laubens*, A. S. (simple) *ge-le-a-fa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *ha rto* A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use other G. simple nouns as *beri* (A. S. *bearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf erden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed

Page 15 — Nouns in -e (II 2) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c

Freond and *feond* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freogan* (G. *freien*) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to fab. *hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that *æ* is changed to *a*, otherwise not, as, *wæstm*, pl. *wæstmas* (*fruit*) *æcer*, pl. *æceras*, *æcras*: thus too in adjectives; *smæl*, *þæt smale*, *smalor*, but *fæst*, *þæt fæste*, *fæstor* and the like.

Feld and *ford* originally belonged to III 2; *feld-u*, *ford-u* like *sun-u*

Page 17—*H and* belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u
hand-u

Page 20—*Wædla poor* hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (1 2) *a beggar*; *wædlan to beg* *þearfa poor* is commonly if not always used as a noun—*a poor man*. *wana wanting* seems indeclinable.

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings *-or*, *-ost* (-oste), and *er*, *-est* (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former often follow *a*, *o*, and *u*, the latter *e*, *i*, or *y*. see addit note on p 42

Page 23.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p 70) as *lang-e*, *lang-lice*, *strang-e*, *strang-lice*, *bræd-lice*, *heág-e*, *heá-lice*, *cúð-e*, *cúð-e-lice*, *sceort-lice*, *soft-e*, *þfel-e*, *lytl-e*

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Leat* is (*b y-læt* (-þ e), *t* being added as in *against* &c. The ending -in est has no connexion with *mæst* *most*, though it also has become *-most* our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. “If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say”

Page 29—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*pissere* and *pissera* are older forms than *pīse* and *pissa*.

Page 32.—The *ā-* in *ā-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73), *ā* is *ezer*, *aye*, *āet*, Goth. *āiw-*, G. *je*, whence *āiōv*, Goth. *āiws*, L. *eternum*, *aye*, *eternity*. *A'*- or *āg-* (p. 65) gives a general sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand* *some one*, *ā-hwær* *some-*, *any-*, *every-where*, *ā-hwænne* *some time*, *any time*, P. *some-when*, *any-when*: with the negative it becomes *nā never*, *no*, *nā-liwider* *no-whether*; *nā-wiht* is more regular than *nā-n-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *āðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *ā-hwærðer*, and = *āgðer*, *āg-hwærðer* *nāwðer* is *nā liwærðer* = L. *ne-uter*, hence rightly comes O and P. *nother* *neither* has arisen from *either*.

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *ān*, in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored, most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sunm* is commoner for the article than *ān*.

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or Weak as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed Complex from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or Strong, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S., as, simple: *cēallian*, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are* to *call*; *tēmian*, *δαμ-ειν*, *dom-are* to *tame*; *līx-an*, L. *luc-ere* to *shine* complex, *grātian*, *γραφ-ειν*, to (*en-*) *grate*, *write*, *bree-an*, *ῥηγ-ειν*, *frang-ere*, *to break*, *ter-an*, *τειρ-ειν*, *ter-ere* to *tear* &c.; *flōw-an*, *flu-ere* to *flow*, *drag-an*, *trah-ere* to *draw*, *drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *bake*, *sleep*, *leap*, *sweep*, *weep*, *fare*, *wield*, *fold*, *step*, *starve*, *creep*, *reek*, *lye*

wreak, dive, shore, row, flow, swallow, brook &c from A. S. complex forms have become simple. others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or gone out of use, as, *hung, hore, stood, shone, clomb, glode, bet, shod; wazen, hewn, laden, graven, shapen, washen, steron, holpen, bursten, foughten, swollen &c*

G. *walten (to rule), wallen (to boil), salien (to sow), krahen (to crow), kauen (to chew), wachten (to watch), watlen (to wade), reuen (to rue) laehen (to laugh)*, as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple, others, as *bucken (to bake), hanen (to hew), sieden (to seethe) &c.* are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I., 2., and I. 3 have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a seeming complex form, as, *meet, met, lead, led, send, sent, build, built,* from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning, as, *bringan, bringe, bróhte, broht, or bringe, brang, brunnen;* the latter however is rare.

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and III. 3 from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former; as, *healde, heóld, heolde &c drage, dróh &c* III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel, *binde, band, bunde, band, bundon.* II. 1 short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long, *breee, bise, bráce, bræc, brácon*, except the first in ea, as, *geaf, geafe &c.* together with *eom, eome &c.*, and *nam, name &c.* which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel, *dríte, dráf, drife, drát, drifon, clúfe, cleáf, "clufe, cleáf, clufon.* Complex participles past are all short but some of II. 2

Page 41.—Verbs in -gan (for -ian) are often conjugated regularly

like I. 2.; as, *fyligan* to follow, imperf. *fyligde*, imper *fylig*, but part. past *fyligd*. see p. 42.

Page 42.—There seem to have been originally two distinct classes of verbs in -ian, both now included in I 1., the one forming its imperf. and prnt. past in -ōde, -ōd, the other in -e-de, -ed, the former answering closely to the Gr contracted verbs, and the L in -āvi, -ātus, ēvi, ēt-us, and -īv, īt-us, the latter to the L in -ui, īt-us &c. In time -ōde, -ōd were shortened, and then came to be confounded with -e-de, -ed, many verbs being found with both forms, -ōde, -ōd however seems to occur oftenest when the root-vowel is a, o, or u, -de, ed when it is e, i, or y; see addit. note on p 25: -ade, -ad is a modification of -ode, -od. The -de, -ed (-d) of I. 2. 3. is contracted from -e-de, -ed, I. 1.; when the d is thus brought next a hard consonant it becomes t.

The characteristic c is not changed if l, n, or s stand before it, as, else (*delay*) imperf. *eclēte*, *dience* (*drench*) *drenēte*, *wisēc* (*wish*) *wiscēte*, unless the n be dropped, as in *þinēc*, *þūhte*, and the like it else commonly (in simple verbs) becomes h, as in *tāce*, p. 42, &c

Page 43.—The original form of the 2nd and 3rd persons sing. of I 2., II. and III. was *hýrest*, *hýreð*, *tellest*, *teleð*, *brecest*, *breeð*, *healdest*, *healdeð*, *drugest*, *drigeð*, *bindest*, *bindeð*, *drifest*, *drifeð*, *clúfest*, *clúfeð* and the like, which often occur, especially in poetry. the shortened and modified forms *hýrt*, *hýrð*, *telst*, *brest* &c. given in the grammar are more modern, and commonest in prose

Page 44.—All verbs seem at first to have formed their 1st pers. pres. in -o or -u; comp. -ō and L. -o. *haf o* = L. *habeo*

Page 50.—Most of the verbs in II. 2., and some in II. 3. are derived from the Goth reduplicative verbs, which repeat the long syllable, the A. S has kept only what may be called the literal augment, and that in but a few verbs; as, *héht*, *leólc*, *reórd*, from *hátan*, *læcan* (*to play, deceive*), *rádan* (G. *zedan* to *discourse*), where the Goth.

has hái-háit, lái-láik, rái-ród from háitan &c. Some only alter the vowel, as *sceape*, *seeōp*, where the Goth has sái-skáp.

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. pres. in -énde; *sleán*, *sleánde*.

Page 58.—Wrifðan is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ð into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the Imperf., and in the past part.. see *cweðan* p 50, *weorðan* p 57, and *seððan* p 60, which are all regular.

Page 62—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjectives with a noun, sometimes do not; as, *þa þing þe him ge-sende wærnu* *the things that were sent him* *Seó óðre naman wæs Tate háten who by another name was hight Tate.*

The part. part in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary hæbban, as, *þá hſig hæfdon hyra lofsang ge-sungenne* *when they had sung their song of praise.*

Page 63—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness, *un-peaw* *bad habit*, *un-weder* (G. *un-pe-witter*) *storm, bad weather*

The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó* in composition, as, *to-gún* *to go asunder, separate*, *tó-zún* *to go to*, G. *zer gehen*, *zu-gehen*. *to-* implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

Page 64—For- gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like *kara-*, *démnan* *to judge, for-démnan* *to condemn, círiew*, *kara-kríwei*, G. *ur theilen*, *ver-urtheilen*, *beían* *to burn, for-bernan* *to burn up, consume*, *kæiiv*, *kara-kæiiv*, G. *brennen, ver-brennen*; *dón* *to do, make, for-dón* *to un-ruin, destroy, scyppan* *to form, for-scyppan* *to transform*, *form; for-seáñ* *a very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions *for* and *fore*, (probably of the same origin, = i. pro). thus *for-seán* is *to over-look, despise*, G. *ver-sehen*, *for-eán*, *fore-seán* *to fore-see*, G. *vor-sehen*; *for-gán* *to for-go, do it thou,*

for-ush, G. *ver-gehen*, L. *per ire*, *fore-gán* to *fore-go*. *go before*, G. *vor-gehen*, L. *pro-ire*. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

A *nd-* answers closely to *āvrti*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; *and-saca denier*, *und-wyrdan*, *and-swarian*, *āvrt-ein* to *answer*, *and-wlitan*, *āvrt βλεπειν*, to *gaze at, look in the face*.

The prefix *ge-* is in A S used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G and D it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, resembling to its original collective force. A S *ge-* sometimes denotes the result of doing a thing, as. *Ge-slóh þín fader tó hða máste thy father by striking arranged the greatest of feuds. His feorh ge-saran óðre ge-rinan to save his life by going or running (to a sanctuary).*

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mate* *im-mense, measure less*, *or-trúwian* to *despair*, *or-soth* *care-less, sc-eure*. It must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-cald* *very old*, (G *u-lit*), from *oī*, *ord* *beginning, point*, connected with L *or-oi*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L *-ul-un*, *gyd-el*, L *cung-uluni, gudlc*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from *man*, G. *mann*, *mannu*; *gyd-en* from *gyd*, G *gott*, *gott-in*, D. *god*, *god-in* in *-e*, *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *sol-a* *foal*, *wal-e* from *wealth* or *wala*, *Celt, stranger, webb-e* (or *webb-est* i.e. *webster*), from *webba* *weaver*.

The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2) *doom*, *judgment*, *authority*, *dignity* *húd* is also a noun (II. 2) *state*, *condition*, *rank*, *Holy Orders*.

Page 67 — *scipe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*see upon*), *to shape form, create*, and denotes *form, mode, condition*; *land-scope*, or *land-skip*, (*land-sceipe*) G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-ship*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ex-ox*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68 — A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish*, *-isch*, *-sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *lic*, *-like* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a *good* or indifferent notion, as, *fole-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepl-isch*), *fole-lic popular*, *child-isc child-ish*, G. *kindl-isch*; *child-lic* *child-like*, G. *kind-lich*, compare also *mann-isch*, *man-like*, *man-ly*, G. *mann-isch*, *mann-lich*; *woman-isch*, *woman-like*, G. *weib-isch*, *weib-lich*; *gurl-ich*, *maiden-ly* &c.

Wlde-ol (-*ul*) answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity, as, *spret-ul*, *cwul-ul*, L. *loqua-ix*, *dic-ax talkative*, *evil-tongued*, *et-ul*, L. *et-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *oð-ð-ig-ol truth-telling*, *leópi þane-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

-en (G. *-ern*, (U)) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stan-en* of *stone*, G. *stein-ern*, *treó w-ea* *treen*, *wood-en*; *gyld-en* *gold-en*, G. *gold-en*, *lin-en* *lin-en*, *of lin* or *flux*, G. *lein-en*; from *stan*, *treow*, *gold*, *lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete, *ston-en*, *bruch-en* &c. are still in P. use.

-eund answers to L. *-eund-us*

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past, as, *ge-hjorn-ed* *horn-ed*, (G. *ge-horn-t*), *ge-sceod shod* (G. *ge-schuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69 ——*e-*, *-n-*, *-s-*, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-ian* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against *ne* in the same syllable, see p. 2 n. 1.

The verbal endings *-ian* and *-an* (*-eiu*, G. and D. *-an*) became in time *-en* and *-e*, the latter of which has in many cases been dropped, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form

Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are. *& aye, always, æfre* (G. and D. *immer*) *ever, næfre* (G. and D. *nimmer*) *never, ædre* *straightway, recene* *instantly, eft-sona* *eft-soon, forth-with, end-mes* *at length, þær-rihte* (soi *ð-rihte*) *forthwith, elles else, otherwise, elles-hwider* *else-whither, ellor elsewhere, þus* (D. *dus*) *thu* *georne* (G. *gerne*) *earnestly, willingly, þearle very, exceeding, geara well, accurately,* (lyt-) *hwon a little* (S. *a wheen*), *hūlu* (*hwegu*), *hwæt-(hwylc)-hugu &c.* *somewhat, a little, þances gratis, ágnes þances of one's own accord, his &c willan, unwillan with, against his &c. will, semninga suddenly, hreedinga quickly, áninga* (*éninga*) *alone, only, on bæeling backward.* *Sona* is construed with a genitive; as, *Sona þes soon after that. Sona þes wintres early in the winter*

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Orena-ford* is not from *o-a or*, but from the Celtic root meaning *water, river*, (A. S. *wos* is *ooze, liquid*) which appears in *Ouse* (many) *Iris*, Ex, Ax, Uck, Esh, Oise, Aisne, Yssel, Ouv, and so many other names of rivers, and this is confirmed by *Ousn-ey* in the neighbourhood. *Ford of oren* is however the strict meaning of the A. S. name, and doubtless the one then attached to it, *Bog-nopoc*, *Schwein-furt*, *Swin-ford* and the like supply fair analogies.

Ofer- sometimes conveys the same idea as *for-*; *ofer-gitan* (= *for-gitan*) to *forget*. *ofer-hyegan* = *for-hyegan* to *despise*.

Of- beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one, as, *me þincð me thinks, me of-pined it repented me, I take it ill.*

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *on-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it, as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-floote*, *a-hie*. A. S. *on-life* (*G* am leben), *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twa*, *a-feared*, A. S. *a-fered*, *O* *on flote*, *on life*, *on two*, also *on sleep*, *on row* &c. now *a-sleep* &c., we yet say *on board*, or *o-board*, *on fire*, or *a-fire* and the like see also p. 69—71, 73

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*, as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down*, *down* (= *G* berg-ab), *of-hýrst a-thwist*, we say too *of kin* or *a-kin*, it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-muv*, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *nf-*, thus *a-faran to de-part*, *a-wandan to turn away*, *a-weorpan to cast off*, answer to *G* *ab-fahien*, and *G* and *D* *ab-wenden*, *at-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *at-weipen* so *áπo*, *áπ'became L ab*, and that in time a Once or twice 'E *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*, as *gelic* (*O* *y-like*), *a-like*, *ge-mang* (*O* *e-mong*), *a-mong*

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an abl. or dat. of the cause &c., which commonly stands first, as, *lú-dádum fáh stained with (my) former deeds*. *Wundum wérig weary with wounds*

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done, as, *lis freónum or-wéne despaired of by his friends* *Wurðull þám cyningum to be honoured by kings* *Un-a-seegend-lí ánígum unspeakable by any*

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the dative, as, *Ic eom ge-tiywe min on hlíf-orde I am true to my lord*. *He wes me vrre he was angry with me* *Di híthen wes þám folce gram (the) Lord was wroth with the people*

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the dative; as, *A'n biseop þe him þá henedest wes a bishop that was then nearest (handiest) to him*.

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed *Nánig him ge-lisce þæt dóñ meahte none could do that like him*

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the dative of the far ob-

ject: *seegan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beðan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-swarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgue, syllan to give, sell (of which examples need not be given), wið-inetun to compare, measure with, ge-an-liscian to liken, make like, yrsiun to be angry with, æt-filhan to approach, apply to, wifian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L p̄r̄-esse) to govern, be over, be-súrgian to put, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object, losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected, as, H̄ire fær is wið-meten fyrd-licum tūman he is going as compared to an army on the march. I eom yslum and axum ge-an-liscol I am made like cinders and ashes Sc̄-he yrsað his breðer he that is angry with his brother Nō ic him þas georne æ seali I did not therefore willingly approach him. Þot hīg m̄.h. on þām foile wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-þy heó þá feala geura þissum mynstre for-cw̄ms when she the many years had ruled this convent. Þá be-sárgode he þāre sorh-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. H̄im losade án sceáp he had lost one sheep*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative, as, *Demað rihtne dōm judge right judgment.*

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative. *ge biddan to pray, warnian to be ware, belgan to be angry, ge-wraðian to be wroth, as, ponne þū þe ge-bidde when thou prayest Warniað eōw fram mannum be ware of men. Warniað wið þa bōceras be ware of the scribes. Þā bealh he hine then was he angry. Ge belgað wið me yē are angry with me. Þā ge-wraðede hine se arce-bisop Lanfranc then was the archbishop Lanfranc wroth.*

Likewise some compounds of *seón*; as, *Hine &c. for-seón (G. sich ver-sehen) to eri, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he hine under-bæc be-sæwe if he should took back.*

Page 81.—*S.*—Wealdaū, ou ton. éhtan, bidañ, and earn-
tan sometimes govern the accusative.

Page 83.—On-braciān to dīend, feel horror at governs the genitive like ou-dreadan, as, An þraciende þas un-gelimpes
feeling horror at the misfortune.

Page 87.—Be and tō sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þy
mæg ælc man witan by that may each man know. Tō-þy-þwēt
(= tō-hón þwēt) in order that. Tō-hwyl why?

As æt is sometimes *to*, so is tō sometimes *at*, the two are now
and then confounded in F, and G zu stands for both. Tō and æt
(the latter in composition often) sometimes mean *from*, the former espe-
cially with wilnað and seccað, as, Ealle tō he wites wil-
nað all from thee desire food. Munna ge-hwyl se-he séceð
tō him every man that ceth from him. He þwēt ful geþeah
æt Wealh-þeón he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealth-
theó.

Tō meaning *motion to*, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusa-
tive. He for tō Samariam þwēt lind he went to the land of
Samaria

Page 88.—Tō-emnes (a rare word) rather *by, along side, over-*
against than along, is from eten (efn, emn) even, eyad, on-efn
(-emn) is the same, Hūm on-efn liged ealdor-ge-winna by
him leth (his) deadly for. Emn-, em-are common in composition;
emn-lang (G. eben (so) long) *at the same length*, em-leóf (G.
eben (so) lieb) *equally dear*, em-þeów *fellow-slave*.

Page 90.—In non, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on
(-in) being here only an ending and not the preposition on, serving
in the two last to change the verb into a preposition

o

Page 93.—Pend en while sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Pend
en hit hót sy while if be hot.

Page 95.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before, likewise for-standan* (G. ver-schen) *to understand govern the accusative, as, Hine God furstod him God defended*

Page 96—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swa *the same as—, in like manner as—, ná-lw̄s þæt án ac— not (that) only but—, nates-hwón by no means, nólbt-pón-lw̄s never-(nought)-theless, gea yea, ná nay, gese yes, nese no, næs (nas) not huru moreover, chiefly huru-pinga at least, þæs-be since, after that, because, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *hway, þæs(-for) for that, therefore, gen, gena yet**

Comp. οὐκ ἐχόμεν εἰ μη—*we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the G. and A. S. syntax.*

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood, as, Wā (weorðe) þam men! *wo worth the man!*

Page 97—Lo! has no more to do with *look* than O. *gif* has with *gisan*: our vulgar *law!* and *taw!* may also be derived from lá!

Page 98—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say, this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfric was a common name, among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152, n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boethius, where its meaning is not very clear

Page 140—Tó- in tó-granes sometimes does not rhyme (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations. to- on the other hand never rhymes

